

**Genetic diversity of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains in the Pretoria
region in South Africa**

ADEOLA MUJIDAT SALAWU

Genetic diversity of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains in the Pretoria region in South Africa

by

ADEOLA MUJIDAT SALAWU

Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree

MAGISTER SCIENTIAE

MSc (Medical Microbiology)

Department of Medical Microbiology

Faculty of Health Sciences

University of Pretoria

Gauteng

South Africa

October 2013

Declaration

I, the undersigned, declare that the dissertation hereby submitted to the University of Pretoria for the degree MSc (Medical Microbiology) and the work contained herein is my original work and has not previously, in its entirety or in part, been submitted to any university for a degree. I further declare that all sources cited are acknowledged by means of a list of references.

Signed _____ this _____ day of _____ 2014

*Spending time with GOD is the key to our strength and success in all areas of life. Be sure that you never try to work GOD into your schedule, but always work your schedule around
HIM*

Joyce Meyer

Dedication

To my dear husband (Babatunde Rotimi): Thank you for your support, love and understanding

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Firstly: I would like to extend my greatest gratitude to the almighty GOD, the creator of heaven and earth. My GOD, I will forever be grateful to You

Secondly: I would like to sincerely thank the following individuals:

Prof MM Ehlers (supervisor), Department of Medical Microbiology, University of Pretoria/NHLS, for her humility, endless motivation, patience, support and professional supervision in the successful completion of this research project. Prof, GOD bless you

Dr MM Kock (co-supervisor), Department of Medical Microbiology, University of Pretoria/NHLS, for her guidance, understanding, support and molecular biology expertise regarding this research project. It was really nice having you as a co-supervisor

Iqra: thank you for always being willing to help, I really do appreciate all your kind gestures

My extended family (colleagues): Oluwatoyin, Tsidy, Ivy, Shane, Janine, Ben, Ricardo, Marisa, Fatima, Ayman, Tanweer and Segun for their moral support and understanding

My family and in-laws: for their constant love, prayers, endless motivation, understanding and support

My friends: Dr Ayo and Maltina Chukwu for their tremendous support and encouragement

Animal and Zoonotic Diseases (AZD) Institutional Research Theme, Institute for Cellular and Molecular Medicine (ICMM) Faculty Research Theme: for the financial support received for my MSc degree

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
LIST OF TABLES	iii
LIST OF FIGURES	iv
LIST OF SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS	vi
LIST OF PUBLICATIONS AND CONFERENCE CONTRIBUTIONS	x
SUMMARY	xi
CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION	1
CHAPTER 2: LITERATURE REVIEW	9
2.1 Introduction	9
2.2 History and background of <i>S. aureus</i>	10
2.3 Classification of <i>S. aureus</i>	11
2.4 Characteristics and morphology of <i>S. aureus</i>	12
2.4.1 Genomic characteristics of <i>S. aureus</i>	13
2.5 Epidemiology of MRSA infections	16
2.5.1 Healthcare-associated MRSA and Community-associated MRSA	18
2.5.2 Important global MRSA clones	20
2.6 Pathogenesis and virulence of MRSA strains	22
2.7 Antimicrobial resistance of MRSA	24
2.7.1 Penicillin resistance of MRSA	24
2.7.2 Methicillin resistance of MRSA	25
2.7.3 Vancomycin resistance of MRSA	29
2.8 Diseases caused by MRSA	30
2.9 Treatment and prevention of MRSA infections	32
2.10 Diagnostic identification of MRSA from clinical specimens	33
2.10.1 Phenotypic methods for the characterisation of MRSA isolates	34
2.10.2 Molecular identification and characterisation assays for MRSA isolates	35
2.10.2.1 Conventional PCR assays for the detection of MRSA isolates	36
2.10.2.2 Real-time PCR assays for the detection of MRSA isolates	36
2.10.2.3 Staphylococcal cassette chromosome <i>mec</i> typing of MRSA isolates	37
2.10.2.4 Staphylococcal protein A typing of MRSA isolates	37
2.10.2.5 Accessory gene regulator typing of MRSA isolates	38
2.10.2.6 Pulsed-field gel electrophoresis for the typing of MRSA isolates	39
2.10.2.7 Multilocus sequence typing of MRSA isolates	39
2.11 Summary	41
References	43

	Page
CHAPTER 3: GENETIC DIVERSITY OF METHICILLIN RESISTANT STAPHYLOCOCCUS AUREUS STRAINS IN THE PRETORIA REGION IN SOUTH AFRICA	70
3.1 ABSTRACT	70
3.2 INTRODUCTION	71
3.3 MATERIALS AND METHODS	73
3.3.1 Study setting, collection and confirmation of MRSA isolates	73
3.3.2 Total DNA extraction of MRSA isolates	74
3.3.3 Multiplex-PCR assay for the detection of 16S rRNA, <i>mecA</i> and PVL genes of the MRSA isolates	74
3.3.4 PCR assay for <i>spa</i> typing of MRSA isolates	75
3.3.5 Duplex PCR assay for the <i>agr</i> typing of MRSA isolates	76
3.3.6 Multilocus sequence typing analysis of selected MRSA isolates	76
3.3.7 Analysis of the PCR products	77
3.3.8 Analysis of data	77
3.4 RESULTS	78
3.4.1 Demographics	78
3.4.2 Prevalence of the 16s rRNA, <i>mecA</i> and PVL genes of the MRSA isolates	79
3.4.3 Characterisation of MRSA isolates using <i>spa</i> typing	79
3.4.4 Characterisation of MRSA isolates using <i>agr</i> typing	79
3.4.5 Characterisation of MRSA isolates using multilocus sequence typing	80
3.4.6 Antimicrobial susceptibility for the ten representative isolates <i>spa</i> sequencing and MLST analysis using the Vitek2 automated system (bioMérieux, Mary l'Etoile, France)	80
3.5 DISCUSSION	81
3.6 CONCLUSIONS	88
Acknowledgements	88
References	89
CHAPTER 4: CONCLUSIONS	108
4.1 Concluding remarks	108
4.2 Future research	110
References	112
APPENDIX A: Reagents and buffers used in the experimental procedures	115
APPENDIX B: Confirmation of MRSA isolates and DNA extraction	116
APPENDIX C: Clinical information of MRSA isolates and molecular results	120

LIST OF TABLES

		Page
Table 2.1:	Summary of the classification of <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> (Euzéby, 2011)	11
Table 2.2:	Clinical and genetic differences between HA-MRSA and CA-MRSA strains	19
Table 2.3:	Selected <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> virulence factors: arginine catabolic mobile element (ACME), community-associated methicillin resistant <i>S. aureus</i> (CA-MRSA), chemotaxis inhibitory protein of staphylococci (CHIPS) and extracellular adherence protein (Eap) (Gordon and Lowy, 2008)	23
Table 3.1:	Oligonucleotide sequences of the primers used in the M-PCR assay for the detection of the 16S rRNA, <i>mecA</i> and PVL genes of MRSA isolates (McClure <i>et al.</i> , 2006)	98
Table 3.2:	Oligonucleotide sequences of primers used for the <i>spa</i> typing of MRSA isolates (Schmitz <i>et al.</i> , 1998)	98
Table 3.3:	Oligonucleotide sequences of primers used for the <i>spa</i> sequencing of MRSA isolates (Larsen <i>et al.</i> , 2008)	98
Table 3.4:	Oligonucleotide sequences of primers used for the <i>agr</i> typing of MRSA isolates (Shopsin <i>et al.</i> , 2003)	98
Table 3 5:	Oligonucleotide sequences of primers used for the MLST typing of selected MRSA isolates (Enright <i>et al.</i> , 2000)	99
Table 3 6:	Ridom software <i>spa</i> types, sequence types and geographical distribution of <i>spa</i> types identified in this study (http://spaserver.ridom.de)	99
Table 3.7:	Distribution of the <i>agr</i> groups among the <i>spa</i> clusters identified from the dendrogramme	100
Table 3.8:	Vitek2 automated system (bioMérieux, Marcy l'Etoile, France) antimicrobial susceptibility testing (AST) for the ten representative isolates for <i>spa</i> sequencing and MLST typing	101
Table 3.9:	Results of the ten representative isolates for MLST typing showing the presence of the PVL gene, PFGE pulsotypes, <i>spa</i> cluster and subcluster, <i>spa</i> types, <i>agr</i> groups, sequence types (ST), allelic profiles, clonal complexes (CCs) and the distribution of the sequence types identified worldwide	103
Table 3.10:	Combined results of the three PCR assays and (SCC <i>mec</i> and PFGE) used for the characterisation of the 194 MRSA isolates obtained from the Steve Biko Academic Hospital	120

LIST OF FIGURES

		Page
Figure 2.1:	Circular representation of the <i>S. aureus</i> Newman strain's chromosome. Green bars inside the first (outer) scale indicate the positions of genomic islands. The second circle shows open reading frames orientated in the forward direction; the third circle indicates those orientated in the reverse direction. The fourth and fifth circles show genes for rRNAs and transfer RNAs, respectively. The sixth circle represents G+C content values. Purple indicates domains with G+C contents higher than 50%. The seventh circle shows G+C skew, in which purple indicates a positive value (Baba <i>et al.</i> , 2008)	15
Figure 2.2:	Worldwide prevalence of healthcare-associated methicillin resistant <i>S. aureus</i> (Stefania <i>et al.</i> , 2012)	17
Figure 2.3:	The important global MRSA clones which is currently predominant in large geographical locations around the world. Most clones belong to clonal complexes 5 (shown in blue) or 8 (shown in red). Other predominant clones belong to CCs 22, 30 and 45 (Otto, 2012)	20
Figure 2.4:	Virulence factors produced by <i>S. aureus</i> strains. The bacteria produce cell surface virulence factors (microbial surface components recognising the adhesive matrix molecules, MSCRAMMs) during the exponential phase, while producing exoproteins and exopolysaccharides during the post-exponential/stationary phase (Schlievert <i>et al.</i> , 2010)	22
Figure 2.5:	Basic structure of the representative <i>mec</i> gene complexes. The class A <i>mec</i> gene complex is composed of intact <i>mecRI</i> and <i>mecI</i> genes, encoding the signal transducer and repressor of the <i>mecA</i> gene, respectively. The class B and C <i>mec</i> gene complexes have ψ IS1272 and IS431L integrated in <i>mecRI</i> respectively, which resulted in the partial deletion of the <i>mecRI</i> and complete deletion of the <i>mecRI</i> genes. Class D has no IS element, but parts of the <i>mecRI</i> gene and complete <i>mecI</i> genes are deleted. All <i>mec</i> gene complexes contain IS431 <i>mec</i> (also called IS431R) (Tsubakishita <i>et al.</i> , 2010)	26
Figure 2.6:	Classification scheme for SCC <i>mec</i> types by <i>mec</i> complex and <i>ccr</i> complex type of MRSA (David and Daum, 2010)	28
Figure 2.7:	Peptidoglycan biosynthesis and mechanism of action of vancomycin. Binding of vancomycin to the C-terminal D-Ala-D-Ala of the late peptidoglycan precursors inhibits transglycosylases, transpeptidases and D,D-carboxypeptidases (Sakoulas and Moellering, 2008)	30
Figure 3.1:	Dendrogramme obtained for <i>spa</i> typing, depicting the genetic diversity of the 187 typeable (Clusters A to L) MRSA clinical isolates obtained from the Steve Biko Academic Hospital, South Africa	104

	Page
Figure 3.2:	Pie chart representing the <i>agr</i> groups detected in 193 clinical MRSA isolates analysed 106
Figure 3.3:	Gel electrophoresis of the M-PCR assay for the detection of the 16S rRNA, <i>mecA</i> and PVL genes of the MRSA isolates. Lanes 1 to 10 show the 16S rRNA (756 bp) and <i>mecA</i> (310 bp) genes. Lane 11 shows the 16S rRNA (756 bp), <i>mecA</i> (310 bp) and PVL (433 bp) genes. N= negative control, P= positive control and L = 100 bp ladder 106
Figure 3.4:	Gel electrophoresis results of the duplex PCR assay for the detection of <i>agr</i> groups I and II. Isolates 37 to 53 belonged to <i>agr</i> group I (440 bp <i>agr</i> group I gene), while isolate 54 belonged to <i>agr</i> group II (570 bp <i>agr</i> group II gene). N=Negative control, M=50 bp molecular marker (Thermo Scientific, USA) 107
Figure 3.5:	Gel electrophoresis results of the duplex PCR assay for the detection of <i>agr</i> groups III and IV. Isolates 56 and 61 belonged to <i>agr</i> group III (406 bp <i>agr</i> group III gene). None of the isolates harboured the <i>agr</i> group IV. N=Negative control, M=50 bp molecular marker (Thermo Scientific, USA) 107

LIST OF SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS

SYMBOLS

α	Alpha
β	Beta
$^{\circ}\text{C}$	Degree Celsius
γ	Gamma
%	Percentage

ABBREVIATIONS

ACME	Arginine catabolic mobile element
ADI	Active detection and isolation
<i>agr</i>	Accessory gene regulator
<i>attB_{scc}</i>	bacterial chromosomal attachment site
AIP	Auto-inducing peptide
AST	Antibiotic susceptibility testing
<i>arc</i>	Carbamate kinase
<i>aroE</i>	Shikimate dehydrogenase
BC	Blood culture
BECC	Brazilian epidemic clonal complex
BHI	Brain-heart infusion broth
BORSA	Borderline oxacillin resistant <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>
BURST	Based upon repeated sequence types
bp	Base pair
CA-MRSA	Community-associated methicillin resistant <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>
CC	Clonal complex
<i>ccr</i>	Cassette chromosome recombinase
CDC	Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
CDSs	Coding sequences
CHIPS	Chemotaxis inhibitory protein of staphylococci
CLSI	Clinical Laboratory Standards Institute
<i>coa</i>	Coagulase typing
CoNS	Coagulase negative staphylococci
Cont	Contaminated
CV	Core variable
CVP tip	Central venous pressure tip
D	Days
<i>dnaJ</i>	Heat shock protein 40

DNA	Deoxyribonucleic acid
Eap	Extracellular adherence protein
EARSS	European Antimicrobial Resistance Surveillance System
ET	Exfoliative toxin
EMRSA	Epidemic methicillin resistant <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>
Fc	Fibronectin
FDA	Food and Drug Administration
FRET	Fluorescence resonance energy transfer
<i>glpF</i>	glycerol kinase
<i>gmk</i>	guanylate kinase
h	Hour
hVISA	heteroresistant vancomycin-intermediate <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>
HA-MRSA	Healthcare-associated methicillin resistant <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>
HIV	Human immunodeficiency virus
HVR	Hypervariable region
ICU	Intensive care unit
ID	Intravascular device
IE	Infective endocarditis
IgG	Immunoglobulin G
IM	Internal medicine
IS	Insertion sequence
kDa	kilodalton
KZN	KwaZulu-Natal
LA-MRSA	Livestock-associated MRSA
Luki	Endotracheal aspirate
M	Molar
m	Months
MALDI-TOF MS	Matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization time of flight mass spectrometry
Mbp	Megabase pair
mg	Milligram
MgCl ₂	Magnesium chloride
MGEs	Mobile genetic elements
MIC	Minimum inhibitory concentration
min	Minute
ml	Millilitre
µg	Microgram
µl	Microlitre
µM	Micromolar
MLST	Multilocus sequence typing
MP	Medical pulmonology
M-PCR	Multiplex polymerase chain reaction

MRSA	Methicillin resistant <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>
MSCRAMM	Microbial surface components recognising the adhesive matrix molecules
MSSA	Methicillin sensitive <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>
MW	Molecular weight
NaCl	Sodium chloride
NAG	N-acetylglucosamine
NAM	N-acetylmuramic acid
ND	Not detected
NHLS	National Health Laboratory Service
NP	Not provided
NT	Not typeable
nm	Nanometer
ORF	Open reading frame
OP	Orthopaedic
PBP2a	Penicillin binding protein 2
PCR	Polymerase chain reaction
PFGE	Pulsed-field gel electrophoresis
pH	Hydrogen ion activity
PS	Paediatric surgery
PSM	Phenol-soluble modulins
<i>pta</i>	phosphate acetyltransferase
PVL	Panton-Valentine leukocidin
<i>rpoB</i>	β -subunit of RNA polymerase
RE	Restriction enzyme
s	Second
SaPIs	<i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> pathogenicity islands
SBAH	Steve Biko Academic Hospital
SCC	Staphylococcal cassette chromosome
SEs	Staphylococcal enterotoxins
SEI	Staphylococcal enterotoxin-like
SFP	Staphylococcal food poisoning
STX	Staphyloxanthin
SOPs	Standard operating procedures
<i>spa</i>	Staphylococcal protein A
SSSS	Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome
SSTI	Skin and soft tissue infection
ST	Sequence type
<i>SpeG</i>	gene spermidine acetyltransferase
TAE	Tris-acetate ethylene diamine tetraacetate
TB	Tuberculosis
TBE	Tris-borate ethylene diamine tetraacetate

<i>tuf</i>	elongation factor Tu
<i>Tn</i>	Transposon
<i>tpi</i>	triosephosphate isomerase
TSS	Toxic shock syndrome
TSST-1	Toxic shock syndrome toxin-1
UK	United Kingdom
UP	University of Pretoria
UPMGA	Unweighted pair group method with arithmetic mean
USA	United States of America
UV	Ultraviolet
VISA	Vancomycin intermediate-resistant <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>
VRSA	Vancomycin-resistant <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>
y	year
<i>yqiL</i>	acetyl coenzyme A acetyltransferase

LIST OF PUBLICATIONS AND CONFERENCE CONTRIBUTIONS

PUBLICATIONS

1. **Salawu AM, Kock MM, Maphanga TG and Ehlers MM** (2013) Genetic diversity of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains in the Pretoria region in South Africa. To be submitted for publication to: the *Journal of Clinical Microbiology and Infection*
2. **Salawu AM, Kock MM and Ehlers MM** (2013) Detection of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* sequence type 22 (ST22) in a tertiary academic hospital, in the Pretoria region in South Africa. To be submitted for publication to: the *Journal of Clinical Microbiology and Infection*

CONFERENCE PRESENTATIONS

1. **Salawu AM, Kock MM, Maphanga TG and Ehlers MM** (2012) Genetic diversity of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains in the Pretoria region in South Africa. Faculty day, Faculty of Health Sciences, University of Pretoria, 25 August 2012. (Poster presentation)
2. **Salawu AM, Kock MM, Maphanga TG and Ehlers MM** (2013) Molecular characterisation of clinical methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains in the Pretoria region in South Africa using *spa*, *agr* and MLST typing. Faculty day, Faculty of Health Sciences, University of Pretoria, 20 August 2013. (Oral presentation)
3. **Salawu AM, Kock MM, Maphanga TG and Ehlers MM** (2013) Genetic diversity of clinical methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains in the Pretoria region in South Africa using *spa*, *agr* and MLST typing. The 18th South African Society for Microbiology Biennial Conference (SASM 2013), 24 to 27 November 2013. (Oral presentation)

Genetic diversity of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains in the Pretoria region in South Africa

by

ADEOLA MUJIDAT SALAWU

PROMOTER: Prof Marthie M Ehlers (Department of Medical Microbiology)

CO-PROMOTER: Dr Marleen M Kock (Department of Medical Microbiology)

DEPARTMENT: Medical Microbiology, Faculty of Health Sciences,
University of Pretoria/NHLS

DEGREE: MSc (Medical Microbiology)

SUMMARY

Staphylococcus aureus (*S. aureus*) is one of the leading causes of human diseases in hospital and community settings. Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) has emerged as a significant problem worldwide, resisting all known β -lactam antibiotics, including penicillin and cephalosporins. Increased morbidity and mortality caused by MRSA have increased financial burden on healthcare systems worldwide. Information regarding the genetic diversity of MRSA in the Pretoria region of South Africa is limited.

The relatedness of MRSA isolates has been reported in a previous departmental study, using staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* (SCC*mec*) and pulsed-field gel electrophoresis (PFGE). Staphylococcal protein A (*spa*) types, accessory gene regulatory (*agr*) groups and multilocus sequence types (MLST) were not reported. A total of 194 MRSA isolates were collected from the Steve Biko Academic Hospital in the Gauteng province (South Africa) from April 2010 to August 2011. This study analysed the isolates using *spa*, *agr* and MLST typing.

The results for *spa* typing included 187 isolates as one of the isolate was contaminated (isolate 4) and six isolates were untypeable using *spa* typing. Twelve distinct clusters (A to

L) were obtained. Cluster A had five subclusters (A1 to A5), cluster B had four subclusters (B1 to B4), cluster C and D had two subclusters each (C1 and C2 and D1 and D2, respectively), cluster E had four subclusters (E1 to E4), clusters G and K both had two subclusters (G1 and G2 and K1 and K2, respectively). Clusters F, H, I, J and L had no subclusters. The *agr* typing showed that majority of isolates belonged to *agr* group I [84.5% (163/193)] followed by *agr* group III [7.3% (14/193)], *agr* group II [4.7% (9/193)] and *agr* group I and III [3.6% (7/193)]. No *agr* group IV was detected. Ten representative isolates were selected for *spa* sequencing and MLST typing based on the PFGE results. The sequence types (ST) corresponded to three pandemic clonal complexes (CC), which have been reported worldwide *spa* type t012-ST36/CC30, *spa* type t037-ST239/CC8, *spa* type t891-ST22/CC22 and *spa* type t1257-ST612/CC8. The dominant pulsotype from PFGE typing (57%, 110/191) corresponded to pulsotype A and was represented by *spa* type t037-ST239. One Pantone-Valentine leukocidin (PVL) positive isolate was detected and was identified as *spa* type t891-ST22/CC22.

Combining different molecular techniques showed that typing assays, such as *spa*, *agr* and MLST typing can accurately be used to determine the genetic diversity of MRSA. Compared to PFGE typing, the three Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) based techniques were rapid and less labour intensive but MLST typing was more expensive. The *spa* types and sequence types identified in the study represent major clones that are disseminated in South Africa and worldwide. The detection of an epidemic clone [t891-ST22/CC22 (EMRSA-15)] harbouring the PVL gene as well as one of the most common pandemic clones [(*spa* type t037-ST239/CC8)] in this clinical setting is alarming. Results from this study emphasise the need for strict infection control policies to prevent possible outbreaks of these epidemic and pandemic clones that are already circulating in this clinical setting.

Keywords: MRSA, PVL, *spa*, *agr*, MLST

CHAPTER 1

1.1 INTRODUCTION

Staphylococcus aureus (*S. aureus*) is a commensal bacterium and an important cause of skin and soft tissue infections, pneumonia, osteomyelitis, septic arthritis, endovascular infections and foreign body infections (David and Daum, 2010). *Staphylococcus aureus* has an adaptive nature and is able to survive in the environment, making this bacterium one of the most successful known to man (De Lencastre *et al.*, 2007).

Penicillin was the first antibiotic of choice for the treatment of *S. aureus* infections in the 1940s (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008). However, by the 1950s many strains of *S. aureus* that produced penicillinases were able to inactivate penicillin (Ahmed, 2011). Methicillin, a penicillinase resistant penicillin, was introduced in the late 1950s and used as the antibiotic of choice for the treatment of penicillin resistant staphylococcal infections (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008). However, the first methicillin resistant *S. aureus* strains were observed within a year after the introduction of methicillin (Palavecino, 2007). Resistance to methicillin was due to the acquisition of the *mecA* gene (Palavecino, 2007).

The *mecA* gene is located on a mobile staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* complex (SCC*mec*), which also mediates resistance to antibiotics, such as the β -lactams (penicillins, cephalosporins and carbapenems) (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008). The origin of the SCC*mec* is unknown; the cassette is thought to have originated from staphylococci other than *S. aureus*, such as coagulase negative staphylococci (CoNS) (Deurenberg *et al.*, 2007, Tulinski *et al.*, 2012). Healthcare-associated MRSA (HA-MRSA) infections are caused by multi-drug resistant strains harbouring SCC*mec* types I, II, III and VI (Valsesia *et al.*, 2010). Community-associated MRSA (CA-MRSA), SCC*mec* types IV, V, VII, VIII, IX, X and XI are susceptible to the majority of non β -lactam antibiotics, such as gentamycin and ciprofloxacin (Kennedy and DeLeo, 2009; Valsesia *et al.*, 2010). It was recently documented that a new divergent *mecA* homolog called the *mecC/mecA*_{LGA251} was identified in human and bovine populations in the UK, Denmark and France (Laurent *et al.*, 2012; Stefani *et al.*, 2012). The *mecC/mecA*_{LGA251} gene is located on a novel SCC*mec* called SCC*mec* type XI (Laurent *et al.*, 2012).

Panton-Valentine leukocidin (PVL) is a staphylococcal pore forming exotoxin, which lyses leukocytes and causes tissue destruction (Zanger, 2010). Panton-Valentine leukocidin toxin is encoded by the *lukS*-PV and *lukF*-PV, two contiguous and co-transcribed genes that produce proteins of 32 and 38 kDa, respectively (Duerenberg and Stobberingh, 2008). It is assumed that PVL encoding genes have spread by means of bacteriophages among different *Staphylococcus* strains of healthcare or community origin (Monecke *et al.*, 2007; Otter *et al.*, 2010). Infections caused by PVL positive MRSA strains, such as furunculosis and severe necrotising pneumonia are often associated with CA-MRSA (Lo and Wang, 2011). The role of PVL in the pathogenesis of CA-MRSA is still controversially debated among different researchers and increasingly more studies are reporting the presence of the PVL gene in methicillin sensitive *Staphylococcus aureus* (MSSA) and coagulase negative staphylococci (CoNS) (Wardenburg *et al.*, 2008; Villaruz *et al.*, 2009; Salaam-Dreyer, 2010; Lo and Wang, 2011).

Infections associated with MRSA are usually associated with high morbidity and mortality (Graveland *et al.*, 2009). Understanding the molecular epidemiology and evolution of MRSA provide useful information for controlling transmission in healthcare and community settings (Chen *et al.*, 2009). It is important to develop effective strategies to prevent and control the spread of MRSA (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008). Molecular typing techniques used to investigate outbreaks of MRSA include pulsed-field gel electrophoresis (PFGE), SCC*mec* typing, staphylococcal protein A typing (*spa* typing), accessory gene regulator typing (*agr* typing) and multilocus sequence typing (MLST) (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008). The PFGE typing is described as a highly discriminatory method for monitoring an outbreak of MRSA and is referred to as the gold standard for typing MRSA strains (Vainio *et al.*, 2011). However, the analysis of PFGE typing has become more difficult and labour intensive as the number of profiles in the MRSA database continues to grow (Vainio *et al.*, 2011). In cases of MRSA outbreaks, rapid molecular typing techniques are required to cluster epidemiologically linked cases and separate them from sporadic cases (Strandèn *et al.*, 2003).

The development of sequence-based molecular typing techniques, such as *spa* and MLST typing, represents improvements over the PFGE due to the reproducibility, ease of use and interlaboratory comparison of results (Strommenger *et al.*, 2008). The use of software algorithms for the *spa* and MLST typing enables the classification of MRSA strains into specific lineages (Strommenger *et al.*, 2008). Staphylococcal protein A typing is based on

sequence polymorphisms in the variable X region of the *spa* gene for *S. aureus* surface protein A and has the advantage of being rapid, with a high throughput and interlaboratory portability (Makgotlho *et al.*, 2009; Struelens *et al.*, 2009; Stefani *et al.*, 2012). The *spa* typing provides the reliable allocation of MRSA strains to the prevalent epidemic lineages (Strommenger *et al.*, 2008). Multilocus sequence typing is based on the sequence analysis of seven housekeeping genes [carbamate kinase (*arc*), shikimate dehydrogenase (*aroE*), glycerol kinase (*glpF*), guanylate kinase (*gmk*), phosphate acetyltransferase (*pta*) triosephosphate isomerase (*tpi*) and acetyl coenzyme A acetyltransferase (*yqiL*)] (Mehndiratta and Bhalla, 2012). The alleles at each of the seven loci define the allelic profile, which corresponds to the sequence types (Mehndiratta and Bhalla, 2012). The BURST (based upon repeated sequence types) algorithm is used to place strains of *S. aureus* that are similar at five or more of the seven housekeeping genes in the same clonal complex (CC) (Kennedy and DeLeo, 2009). The accessory gene regulator (*agr*) of *S. aureus* is referred to as the global regulator of staphylococcal virulence and controls a large set of genes, including extracellular virulence factors and surface proteins (Traber *et al.*, 2008). The polymorphism at the locus across two genes, *agrC* and *agrD* is used to classify the four *agr* groups in *S. aureus* (Nastaly *et al.*, 2010). Gomes *et al.* (2005) reported that isolates with different *agr* groups are most often recovered in distinct geographical locations. The different geographical distribution of distinct *agr* groups is evident of bacterial interference mediated by the *agr* operon (Nastaly *et al.*, 2010). Alternative typing assays, such as *spa*, *agr* and MLST typing can be accurately used to determine the genetic diversity of HA-MRSA and CA-MRSA isolates obtained from clinical specimens (Pantosti and Venditti, 2009).

Makgotlho *et al.* (2009) reported the clonal relatedness of HA-MRSA and CA-MRSA during 2006 to 2008 using conventional multiplex PCR (M-PCR) assays, a real-time M-PCR assay, *spa* typing and hypervariable region (HVR) typing. The *spa* types, *agr* groups, PFGE pulsotypes and MLST types were not reported for the HA-MRSA and CA-MRSA strains circulating in this clinical setting (Steve Biko Academic Hospital). It is, therefore, important to determine the genetic diversity of MRSA strains obtained from patients in this clinical setting in order to initiate strict surveillance and infection control policies that will help limit the spread of MRSA clones circulating in this hospital. This study is a follow-up of another departmental study where *SCCmec* and PFGE typing were used to determine the genetic relatedness of 194 clinical MRSA isolates obtained from Steve Biko Academic hospital (SBAH) in the Gauteng province from April 2010 to August 2011. The aim of this study was

to identify and determine the genetic diversity of HA-MRSA and CA-MRSA isolates that were circulating in the SBAH in the Gauteng province from April 2010 to August 2011 using *spa* typing, *agr* typing and MLST typing and to compare it to the gold standard method, PFGE.

The objectives of this study were:

- To culture and extract the DNA of MRSA isolates obtained from the NHLS diagnostic laboratory of the Department of Medical Microbiology, UP/NHLS
- To use *spa* typing to determine the genetic diversity of the MRSA isolates
- To use *agr* typing to determine the genetic diversity of the MRSA isolates
- To do MLST typing on a selected number of isolates, (selection based on the results by PFGE performed in another departmental study)
- Data analysis and comparisons and the construction of a dendrogramme

REFERENCES

Ahmed M (2011) Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), A challenge and an opportunity! *WebmedCentral Public Health* **2**: (WMC001996)

Chen L, Mediavilla JR, Oliveira DC, Willey BM, De Lencastre H and Kreiswirth BN (2009) Multiplex real-time PCR for rapid staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* typing. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **42**: 3692-3706

David MZ and Daum RS (2010) Community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: epidemiology and clinical consequences of an emerging epidemic. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews* **23**: 616-687

De Lencastre H, Oliveira D and Tomasz A (2007) Antibiotic resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: a paradigm of adaptive power. *Current Opinion in Microbiology* **10**: 428-435

Deurenberg HR, Vink C, Kalenic S, Friedrich AW, Bruggeman CA and Stobberingh EE (2007) The molecular evolution of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology and Infection* **13**: 222-237

Deurenberg HR and Stobberingh EE (2008) The evolution of *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Infection, Genetics and Evolution* **8**: 747-763

Gomes AR, Vinga S, Zavolan M and de Lencastre H (2005) Analysis of the genetic variability of virulence-related loci in epidemic clones of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* **49**: 366-379

Graveland H, Wagenaar AJ, Bergs K, Heesterbeek H and Heederik D (2009) Persistence of livestock associated MRSA CC398 in humans on intensity of animal contact. *PLoS ONE* **6**: e16830 (doi.10.1371/journal.pone.0016830)

Kennedy DA and DeLeo RF (2009) Epidemiology and virulence of community-associated MRSA. *Clinical Microbiology Newsletter* **31**: 154-160

Laurent F, Chardon H, Haenni M, Bes M, Reverdy ME, Madec JY, Lagier E, Vandenesch F and Tristan A (2012) MRSA harbouring *mecA* variant gene *mecC*, France. *Emerging Infectious Diseases* **18**: 1465-1467

Lo WT and Wang CC (2011) Panton-Valentine leukocidin in the pathogenesis of community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* infection. *Pediatrics and Neonatology* **52**: 59-65

Makgotlho PE, Kock MM, Hoosen AA, Lekalakala R, Omar S, Dove M and Ehlers MM (2009) Molecular identification and genotyping of MRSA isolates. *FEMS Immunology and Medical Microbiology* **57**: 104-115

Mehndiratta P and Bhalla P (2012) Typing of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: A technical review. *Indian Journal of Medical Microbiology* **30**: 16-23

Monecke S, Slickers P, Ellington MJ, Kearns AM and Ehricht R (2007) High diversity of Panton-Valentine leukocidin positive methicillin susceptible isolates of *Staphylococcus aureus* and implications for the evolution of community associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Clinical Microbiology and Infection* **13**: 1157-1164

Nastaly P, Grinhole M and Bielawski KP (2010) Molecular characteristics of community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains for clinical medicine. *Archives of Microbiology* **192**: 603-617

Otter JA, Kearns AM and Ellington MJ (2010) Panton-Valentine leukocidin-encoding bacteriophage and gene sequence variation in community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases* **16**: 68-73

Palavecino E (2007) Clinical epidemiological and laboratory aspects of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) infections. *Methods in Molecular Biology* **391**: 1-19

Pantosti A and Venditti M (2009) "MRSA and the pulmonologist". *European Respiratory Journal* **34**: 1190-1196

Salaam-Dreyer Z (2010) Genotyping characterisation of *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates causing bacteraemia in patients admitted to Tygerberg Hospital, Western Cape Province, South Africa. *UNScholar Research Repository* MSc Thesis, Stellenbosch University. Available online: <http://hdl.handle.net/10019.1/4095>. (Accessed: January 2013)

Stefani S, Chung DR, Lindsay JA, Freidrich AW, Kearns AM, Westh H and MacKenzie FM (2012) Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA): global epidemiology and harmonisation of typing methods. *International Journal of Antimicrobial Agents* **39**: 273-282

Strandèn A, Frei A and Widmer AF (2003) Molecular typing of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: can PCR replace pulsed-field gel electrophoresis. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **7**: 3181-3186

Strommenger B, Braukle C, Heuck D, Schmidt C, Pasemann B, Nübel U and Witte W (2008) *spa* typing of *Staphylococcus aureus* as a frontline tool in epidemiological typing. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **46**: 574-581

Struelens MJ, Hawkey PM, French GL, Witte W and Tacconelli E (2009) Laboratory tools and strategies for methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* screening, surveillance and typing: state of the art and unmet needs. *Clinical Microbiology and Infection* **15**: 112-119

Traber EK, Lee E, Benson S, Corrigan R, Cantera M, Shopsis B and Novick PR (2008) *agr* function in clinical *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates. *Microbiology* **154**: 2265-2274

Tulinski P, Fluit Ad C, Wagenaar JA, Mevius D, Van de Vijver L and Duim B (2012) Methicillin resistant coagulase negative staphylococci on pig farms as a reservoir of heterogeneous staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* elements. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology* **78**: 299-304

Vaino A, Koskela S, Virolainen A, Vuopio J and Salmenlinna S (2011) Adapting *spa* typing for national laboratory-based surveillance of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *European Journal of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases* **30**: 789-797

Valsesia G, Rossi M, Bertschy S and Pfyffer EG (2010) Emergence of SCCmec type IV and SCCmec type V methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* containing the Panton-Valentine leukocidin genes in a large academic teaching hospital in central Switzerland: external invaders or persisting circulators? *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **48**: 720-725

Villaruz AE, Wardenburg JB, Khan BA, Whitney AR, Sturdevant DE, Gardner DJ, DeLeo FR and Otto M (2009) A point mutation in the *agr* locus rather than expression of the Panton-Valentine leukocidin caused previously reported phenotypes in *Staphylococcus aureus* pneumonia and gene regulation. *Journal of Infectious Disease* **200**: 724-734

Wardenburg JB, Palazzolo-Ballance AM, Otto M, Schneewind O and DeLeo FR (2008) Panton-Valentine leukocidin is not a virulence determinant in murine models of community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* disease. *Journal of Infectious Disease* **198**: 1166-1170

Zanger P (2010) *Staphylococcus aureus* positive skin infections and international travel. *The Middle European Journal of Medicine* **122**: 31-33

CHAPTER 2

LITERATURE REVIEW

2.1 Introduction

The most virulent *Staphylococcus* species is *Staphylococcus aureus* (*S. aureus*) (Boyle-Vavra and Daum, 2007). *Staphylococcus aureus* is the most isolated bacterial pathogen in hospitalised patients and the second most common bacterium isolated in the community (Boyle-Vavra and Daum, 2007). *Staphylococcus aureus* has various characteristics, such as its virulence factors and quorum sensing mechanisms, which enables it to cause a variety of infections in humans (Moellering, 2012). *Staphylococcus aureus* is associated with infections, such as septicaemia, wound sepsis, septic arthritis, post-surgical toxic shock syndrome, osteomyelitis and pneumonia with high rates of morbidity and mortality (Shittu and Lin, 2006).

In 1929, Fleming discovered penicillin, which was implemented for the use of *S. aureus* infections in the 1940s when commercial production of the antibiotic was possible (Barnes and Sampson, 2011). Penicillin resistant *S. aureus* isolates were observed in hospitals within two years after the introduction of penicillin (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008). In 1959, the first semi-synthetic penicillin derivative namely methicillin was introduced for the treatment of penicillin resistant *S. aureus* infections (Johnson, 2011). However, by 1961 the first methicillin resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) isolates were reported (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008). Resistance to methicillin and other β -lactam antibiotics, such as penicillin and cephalosporins is caused by the acquisition of the *mecA* gene, which codes for a 78-kDa penicillin binding protein 2a (PBP2a or PBP2') (Argudin *et al.*, 2010). The *mecA* gene is located in a *mec* operon with its regulatory genes; *mecI* and *mecRI* (Berger-Bachi and Rohrer, 2002; Turlej *et al.*, 2011). The *mec* operon is located on a mobile genomic island called the staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* (SCC*mec*) (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008). The specific origin of the SCC*mec* is unknown, but it is proposed that it was probably first acquired by horizontal gene transfer from coagulase-negative staphylococcal species such as *S. epidermidis*, *S. scruri* and *S. haemolyticus* (Hallin *et al.*, 2007; Turlej *et al.*, 2011).

Healthcare-associated MRSA (HA-MRSA) can be defined as MRSA infections obtained by inpatients within 48 h or more after hospitalisation, surgery, dialysis, long term care

indwelling devices or a history of previous MRSA infection (Labandeira-Rey *et al.*, 2007). The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) defined community-associated MRSA (CA-MRSA) as infections, which occur in otherwise healthy people without a recent history of hospitalisation or medical procedures and are associated with skin and soft tissue infections (Klevens *et al.*, 2007). Risk factors for CA-MRSA include crowding, compromised skin, contaminated surfaces, shared items and poor hygiene (Kennedy and DeLeo, 2009). It is believed that direct contact with infected individuals is the major mode of transmission of HA-MRSA and CA-MRSA infections (Kennedy and DeLeo, 2009).

Phenotypic and genotypic data both play significant roles in the understanding of MRSA infections and the implementation of necessary infection control policies in hospitals (Shittu *et al.*, 2009a). Molecular techniques used in genotyping of MRSA strains include SCC*mec* typing, staphylococcal protein A typing (*spa*), accessory gene regulatory typing (*agr*), hyper-variable region typing (HVR), coagulase typing (*coa*), pulsed-field gel electrophoresis (PFGE) and multilocus sequence typing (MLST) (Strandén *et al.*, 2003). Pulsed-field gel electrophoresis is regarded as the gold standard for typing MRSA strains; this method is tedious, time-consuming, labour intensive and expensive to perform on a routine basis (Mediavilla *et al.*, 2012). However, other molecular techniques, such as *spa*, *agr* and MLST typing are able to overcome the limitations of PFGE with excellent reproducibility, quality-controlled data, a common nomenclature and utility in infection control (Stefani *et al.*, 2012). Molecular typing techniques are important tools to obtain epidemiological information regarding the most dominant MRSA clones circulating in a particular clinical setting (Stefani *et al.*, 2012).

2.2 History and background of *S. aureus*

Fossils provided evidence, which suggests that staphylococci have been in existence on earth for over a billion years (Moellering, 1995; Moellering, 2012). It was only identified as a bacterial pathogen in the 19th century (Moellering, 1995; Moellering, 2012). *Staphylococcus aureus* was first described in 1881 as a cause of acute suppuration by Sir Alexander Fleming (Oehler, 2013). In 1884, Rosenbach was able to describe the two colony types of *Staphylococcus* as *Staphylococcus albus* (white colonies), which was later renamed as *S. epidermidis* and *S. aureus* (yellow) (Oehler, 2013). In 1894, twenty-four years after the discovery of *S. aureus*, Dr Honore Van de Velde, discovered various enzymes and toxins that

contribute to the pathogenic ability of the bacteria (Lina *et al.*, 2005). During World War I, post-influenza staphylococcal pneumonia was reported among military personnel, which led to cyanosis and rapid progression to death (Chambers, 2001; Oehler, 2013). An 82% mortality rate was documented for patients treated for *S. aureus* septicaemia in the pre-antibiotic era (Diep *et al.*, 2006). The introduction of penicillin in the 1940s was revolutionary and mortality rate due to staphylococcal infections dropped tremendously (Oehler, 2013). However, strains of *S. aureus* resistant to penicillin were reported almost immediately and resistance to other antibiotics (β -lactam antibiotics) emerged within the next decade (Oehler, 2013).

2.3 Classification of *S. aureus*

The genus *Staphylococcus* belongs to the Gram-positive low G+C DNA content group (33% for *S. aureus*) of the bacterial phylum called the *Firmicutes* (Table 2.1) (Euzéby 2011). The genus *Staphylococcus* includes more than 60 species and subspecies that are ubiquitous in nature (Lamers *et al.*, 2012). The 16S rRNA gene is often used for the identification of staphylococcal species, though its utility is now limited due to the high level of similarities seen in various *Staphylococcus* species (Lamers *et al.*, 2012). Hence, more emphasis is placed on other genes, such as the *rpoB* (β -subunit of RNA polymerase), *dnaJ* (heat shock protein 40) and *tuf* (elongation factor Tu), which have been found to be important in the identification of staphylococcal species (Lamers *et al.*, 2012).

Table 2.1: Summary of the classification of *Staphylococcus aureus* (Euzéby, 2011)

Taxonomy	Name
Domain	<i>Bacteria</i>
Kingdom	<i>Eubacteria</i>
Phylum	<i>Firmicutes</i>
Class	<i>Bacilli</i>
Order	<i>Bacillales</i>
Family	<i>Staphylococcaceae</i>
Genus	<i>Staphylococcus</i>
Species	<i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>

The genus *Staphylococcus* is divided into two main groups, which are distinguished by their ability to coagulate plasma: these groups include coagulase negative staphylococci (CoNS) and coagulase positive staphylococci (Otto, 2010). The most important coagulase positive species is *S. aureus* (Otto, 2010). *Staphylococcus aureus* is a versatile and infectious

pathogen in humans (Lowy, 1998). *Staphylococcus aureus* bacteria are considered as opportunistic pathogens when access is gained into the host tissue (Lowy, 1998). The nose is the core ecological niche where *S. aureus* resides in human beings but the determinants of the carrier state is incompletely understood (Wertheim *et al.*, 2005). Coagulase negative staphylococci (CoNS) is becoming highly significant as nosocomial pathogen, especially in patients with indwelling foreign bodies, such as catheters, prosthetic heart valves and joint prostheses (Trülsch *et al.*, 2007). Thirty-nine species of CoNS have been identified (Piette and Verschraegen, 2009). Sixteen of the CoNS species have been identified in specimens of human origin (Piette and Verschraegen, 2009). These 16 CoNS species are grouped into novobiocin-resistant species (*S. cohnii*, *S. saprophyticus*, *S. sciuri* and *S. xylosus*) and novobiocin-sensitive species (*S. auricularis*, *S. capitis*, *S. caprae*, *S. epidermidis*, *S. haemolyticus*, *S. hominis*, *S. lugdunensis*, *S. pasteurii*, *S. saccharolyticus*, *S. schleiferi*, *S. simulans* and *S. warneri*) (Piette and Verschraegen, 2009).

2.4 Characteristics and morphology of *S. aureus*

The staphylococcal cell wall is a unique, semi-rigid structure, which is made up of peptidoglycan, teichoic acids and surface proteins (Plata *et al.*, 2009). The staphylococcal cell wall is reported to consist of 50% peptidoglycan by weight (Lowy, 1998). The thick peptidoglycan structural unit in the cell wall is made up of two major components: (i) a disaccharide composed of N-acetylmuramic acid (NAM) and N-acetyl glucosamine (NAG), (ii) a pentapeptide covalently attached to NAM (Plata *et al.*, 2009; Atilano *et al.*, 2010). The teichoic acid (water soluble polymers that are covalently linked to peptidoglycan) protects the bacterium against environmental conditions, such as heat, antimicrobial fatty acids, cationic antibiotics and lytic enzymes (Bera *et al.*, 2007). The members of the genus *Staphylococcus* are best described as facultative anaerobes, which generate energy through aerobic respiration and produces lactic acid by means of fermentation (Plata *et al.*, 2009). *Staphylococcus aureus* is differentiated from other staphylococcal species by its ability to produce coagulase, a surface enzyme, which interacts with prothrombin in the blood and coagulate plasma by converting fibrinogen into fibrin (Piette and Verschraegen, 2009; Plata *et al.*, 2009). The tube coagulase test is used to detect free coagulase, while the slide coagulase is used to detect the bound coagulase (Turnidge *et al.*, 2008). The slide coagulase test is rapid and easier to perform but some strains of *S. aureus* may yield a negative result (Turnidge *et al.*, 2008).

Hence, a negative slide coagulase test for a bacterium suspected to be *S. aureus* should be followed by a tube test (Turnidge *et al.*, 2008).

On solid agar *S. aureus* produces white pigmented to golden colonies (Plata *et al.*, 2009; Azeez-Akande 2010). The colonies produced by *S. aureus* are often 6 mm to 8 mm in diameter (Plata *et al.*, 2009). It has been reported that over 90% of *S. aureus* strains, isolated from infections in humans, are pigmented (Mishra *et al.*, 2011). Staphyloxanthin (STX) is an orange-red, membrane bound carotenoid, which plays a role in the ecological fitness of *S. aureus* (Mishra *et al.*, 2011). Carotenoids protect the bacterium against oxidants produced by the host immune system during infection and pathogenesis (Plata *et al.*, 2009; Mishra *et al.*, 2011). On blood agar plates, colonies of *S. aureus* are strongly beta-haemolytic due to its ability to lyse red blood cells (Ryan and Ray, 2004).

Staphylococcus aureus is non-motile, grows at a temperature range from 15°C to 45°C and is resistant to high concentrations of sodium chloride (up to 1.7 M) (Matouskova and Janout 2008; Jeyasekaran *et al.*, 2010; Nastaly *et al.*, 2010). The bacterial cells are coccal in shape, ranging from approximately 0.5 µm to 1.5 µm in diameter with some strains that are encapsulated (Green *et al.*, 2012). *Staphylococcus aureus* is able to resist 1% phenol for 15 minutes and withstand heat at 60°C for 30 minutes (Bhanderi *et al.*, 2009).

2.4.1 Genomic characteristics of *S. aureus*

The staphylococcal genome is about 2.8 Mbp in size and its genome has about 2 700 protein coding sequences (CDSs) for regulatory and structural proteins (Plata *et al.*, 2009). The *S. aureus* genome consists of three components; the core genome, the core variable (CV) genes and the mobile genetic elements (MGEs) (McCarthy *et al.*, 2012). The core genome, which is well conserved in *S. aureus*, represents 75% of the genome and encodes the housekeeping genes (Plata *et al.*, 2009; McCarthy *et al.*, 2012). The CV genes represent 10% of the genome and code for proteins (surface proteins and secretory proteins) (McCarthy *et al.*, 2012). The MGEs, which make up 15% of the genome, are defined as fragments of DNA (plasmids, transposons and phages) which move between bacteria by horizontal genetic transfer mechanisms (McCarthy *et al.*, 2012). *Staphylococcus aureus* pathogenicity islands (SaPIs) are defined as large and distinct families of mobile phage-related pathogenicity islands that carry genetic elements, which contain groups of antimicrobial resistance genes as well as

chromosomal cassettes, plasmids, transposons and prophages (Baba *et al.*, 2008; Plata *et al.*, 2009).

To understand the mechanism of staphylococcal virulence and antibiotic resistance, whole genome sequencing of numerous *S. aureus* strains have been performed (Baba *et al.*, 2008). The first staphylococcal genomes to be sequenced were those of MRSA strains N315 (Japanese *S. aureus* strain) and Mu50 (MRSA strain with vancomycin intermediate resistance from a male Japanese baby), of which both were typed as the USA100 strain using PFGE typing (Baba *et al.*, 2008; DeLeo and Chambers, 2009). Kuroda *et al.* (2001) sequenced the whole genome of these two related strains (N315 and Mu50) using shotgun sequencing. The N315 and Mu50 strains have a low G+C content (33%) and comprise of five rDNA operons which makes it different from other *S. aureus* strains, which have rDNA operons (Kuroda *et al.*, 2001). The N315 and Mu50 genomes are made up of 2 595 and 2 695 open reading frames (ORF), respectively (Kuroda *et al.*, 2001; Baba *et al.*, 2008). These two strains have numerous remnant sequences of bacteriophages, pathogenicity islands, transposons and insertion sequence elements distributed over their genomes (Kuroda *et al.*, 2001). Each strain contained an additional distinct plasmid, which carries different antibiotic resistance genes (Steven, 2009).

The genomes of additional strains were sequenced in quick succession, since 2001 to 2009 with the publication of the whole genome sequences of: MW2, MRSA 252, MSSA 476, COL, USA300-or, FPR 3737, USA300-Hou-MR, NCTC 8325, ET3-1, H1, JH9 and the Newman strain (Steven, 2009). The *S. aureus* Newman strain was isolated in 1952 from a human infection and has been widely used in animal models of staphylococcal disease due to its various virulence phenotypes (Baba *et al.*, 2008). Thirty genes that are required for the pathogenesis was identified in the *S. aureus* Newman strain (Bae *et al.*, 2004). Well-characterised virulence genes and genes with unidentified function were reported to be involved in the pathogenesis of staphylococcal infection (Figure 2.1) (Bae *et al.*, 2004).

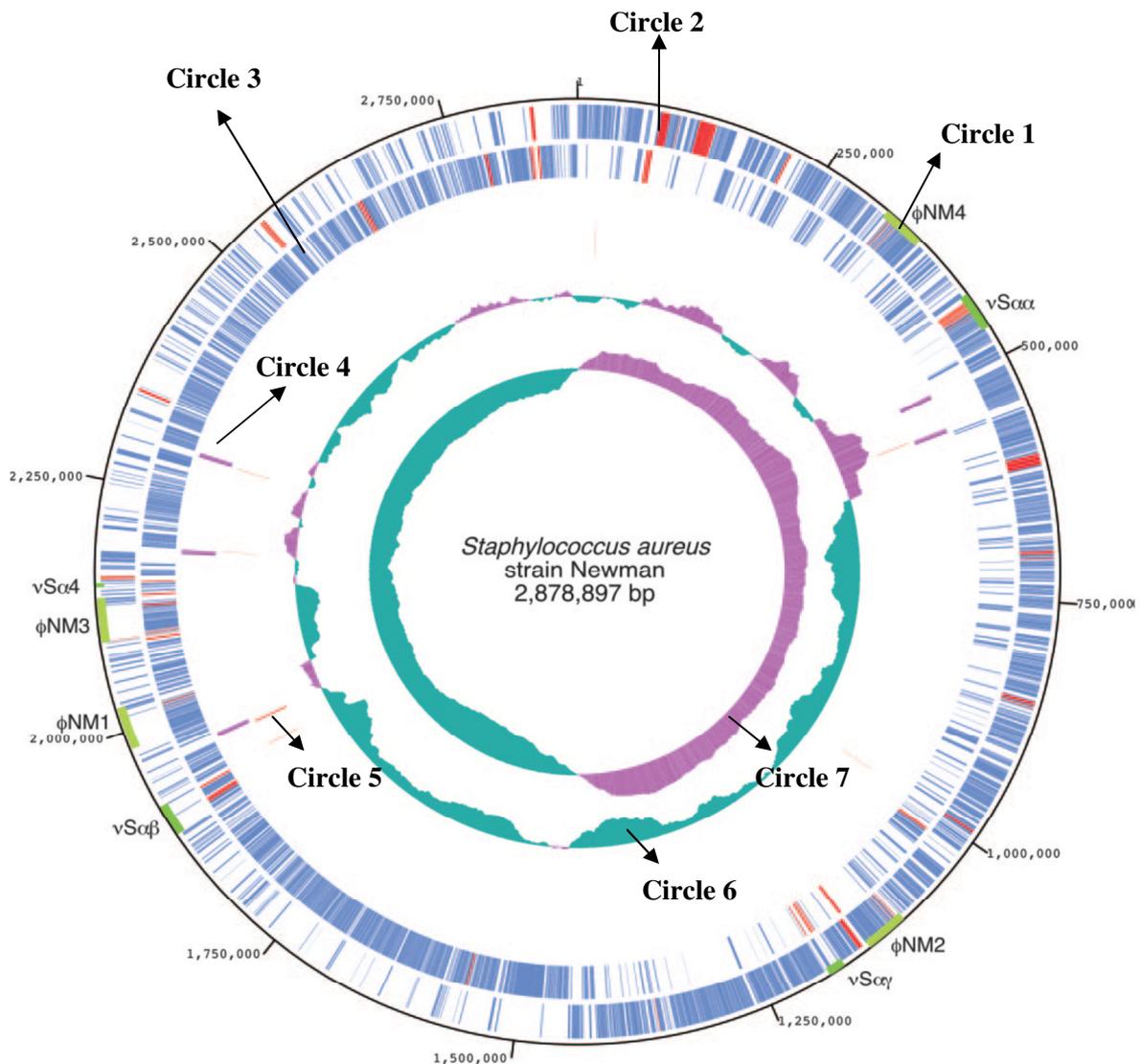


Figure 2.1: Circular representation of the *S. aureus* Newman strain's chromosome. Green bars inside the first (outer) scale indicate the positions of genomic islands. The second circle shows open reading frames orientated in the forward direction; the third circle indicates those orientated in the reverse direction. The fourth and fifth circles show genes for rRNAs and transfer RNAs, respectively. The sixth circle represents G+C content values. Purple indicates domains with G+C contents higher than 50%. The seventh circle shows G+C skew, in which purple indicates a positive value (Baba *et al.*, 2008)

The Newman genome was compared with the genomes of other *S. aureus* that have been sequenced (Baba *et al.*, 2008). The G + C content did not vary significantly (32.9%) but the size of the genomes differed by 5% when the JH9 strain with the largest genome was compared to the smallest RF122 (sizes ranged from 2.74 to 2.91 Mbp) (Baba *et al.*, 2008; Steven, 2009). Further research of the Newman strain's genome identified four prophages named Φ NM1 to Φ NM4 (Baba *et al.*, 2008). *Staphylococcus aureus* Newman variants, which lack any of the four prophages (Φ NM1 to Φ NM4), showed a reduction in its ability to cause an organ specific abscess after intravenous infection of mice (Baba *et al.*, 2008). This shows that these four prophages play a major role in the pathogenesis of staphylococcal infections (Baba *et al.*, 2008). Hence, unlike other staphylococcal strains, which carry some

of its virulence genes on the mobile pathogenicity island, virulence determinants in the Newman strain are more prominent in prophages (Baba *et al.*, 2002; Baba *et al.*, 2008). *Staphylococcus aureus* pathogenicity islands, $\nu\text{Sa}\beta$ and $\nu\text{Sa}\alpha$, which have been found in all *S. aureus* sequenced genomes were also found in the Newman strain (Baba *et al.*, 2008). The $\nu\text{Sa}\beta$ and $\nu\text{Sa}\alpha$ harbours only the remnants of their integrase genes; it was thus assumed that $\nu\text{Sa}\beta$ and $\nu\text{Sa}\alpha$ are no longer mobile and must have played a role in the evolution of the pathogen (Baba *et al.*, 2008).

2.5 Epidemiology of MRSA infections

It has been noted that the frequency of MRSA infections continues to grow globally; the high incidence of infections due to *S. aureus* is attributed to the consequences of advances in patient care and the bacteria's ability to adapt to the changing environment (Boucher and Corey, 2008). Due to the changing epidemiology of infections with MRSA, accurate information is needed for the magnitude and scope of MRSA infections in the general population (Klevens *et al.*, 2007). Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* infections were initially detected in hospitals and have emerged in the community and livestock, which means MRSA, cannot be exclusively considered as a healthcare-associated problem (Stefani *et al.*, 2012). There are about 170 000 estimated MRSA infections in the European healthcare system annually, with more than 5 000 fatalities and an estimate, which indicates more than one million inpatient days with high additional cost (Köck *et al.*, 2011).

Moet *et al.* (2007) gave a report of the data collected from three continents during a seven year period by the SENTRY Antimicrobial Surveillance programme, which monitored the aetiology of skin and soft tissue infections (SSTIs). The incidence of methicillin resistance in *S. aureus* was 35.9% in North America, 29.4% in Latin America and 22.8% in Europe between 1988 to 2004 (Moet *et al.*, 2007; Bassetti *et al.*, 2009). Methicillin resistant *S. aureus* infection rates varied in European countries, ranging from 0.8% to 50% from 1988 to 2004 (Moet *et al.*, 2007; Bassetti *et al.*, 2009). In 2007, the European Antimicrobial Resistance Surveillance System (EARSS) reported that MRSA accounted for 25% to 50% of invasive infections in Bulgaria, Croatia, France, Greece, Turkey, Hungary, Israel, Italy, Portugal, Spain, Turkey and the United Kingdom (EARSS *et al.*, 2007; Bassetti *et al.*, 2009). Figure 2.2 shows the worldwide prevalence of HA-MRSA.

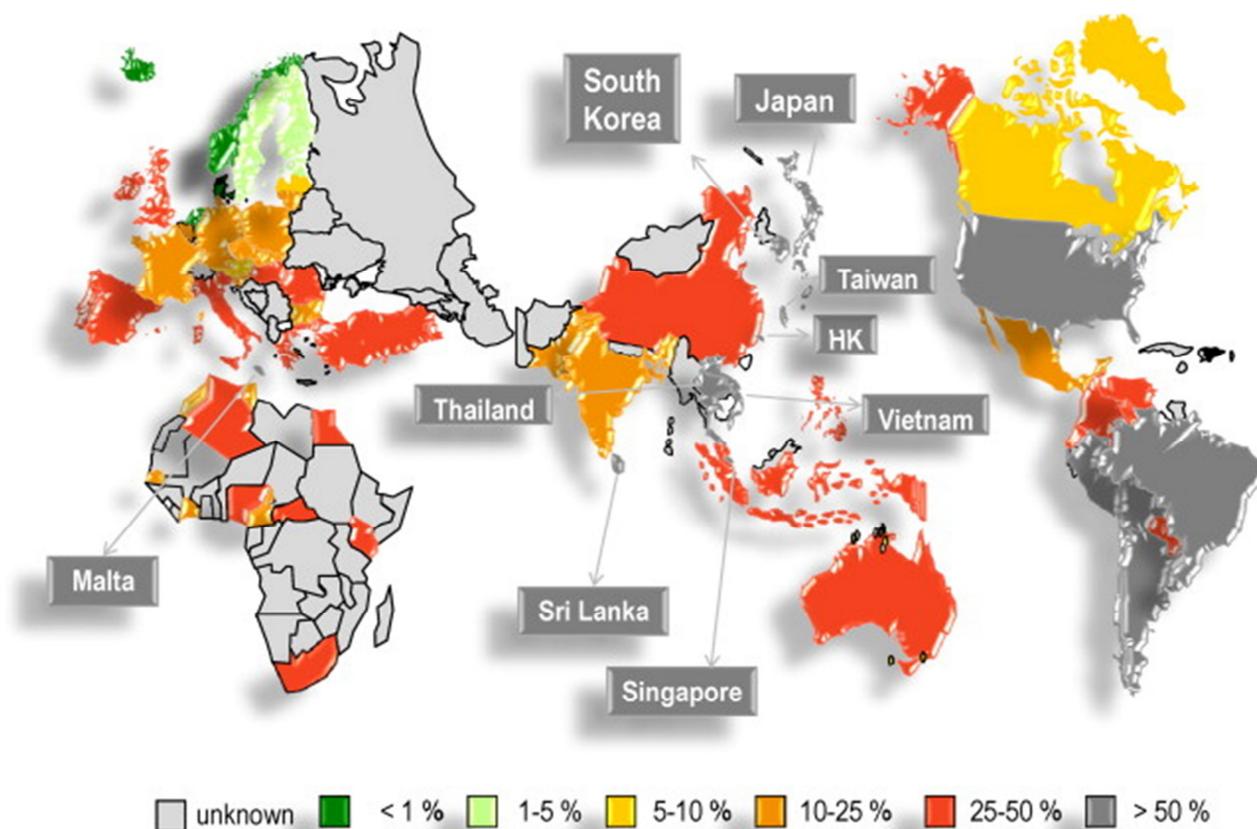


Figure 2.2: Worldwide prevalence of healthcare-associated methicillin resistant *S. aureus* infections (Stefani *et al.*, 2012)

Kesah *et al.* (2003) reported the prevalence of MRSA from eight African countries between 1996 and 1997. The prevalence of MRSA was comparatively high in Cameroon, Kenya and Nigeria ranging from 21% to 30% and below 10% in Algeria and Tunisia (Kesah *et al.*, 2003). According to Ramdani-Bougoussa *et al.* (2001) the prevalence rate of MRSA in Algeria increased to 14% in 2001. Ojulong *et al.* (2009) reported the prevalence of MRSA to be 31.5% in *S. aureus* isolated from surgical site infections in Mulago hospital, Kampala and Uganda. Different studies have reported prevalence rates of MRSA in South Africa (Shittu and Lin, 2006; Shittu *et al.*, 2009b; Moodley *et al.*, 2010; Jansen van Rensburg *et al.*, 2011). Methicillin resistant *S. aureus* was first reported in one of the earliest studies carried out in South Africa in a hospital in Durban in 1978 (Shittu and Lin, 2006). A study by Shittu and Lin (2006) in the KwaZulu-Natal province of South Africa reported 26.9% of 227 (61/227) *S. aureus* isolates obtained to be MRSA. The prevalence rates in Johannesburg and Cape Town were reported to be 33% and 43%, respectively (Shittu and Lin, 2006). A prospective prevalence survey was conducted by Heysell and colleagues in 2008 in the adult tuberculosis (TB) wards of the Church Of Scotland Hospital, a provincial government district hospital in

Tugela Ferry, KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa (Heysell *et al.*, 2011). The study was carried out to determine the prevalence of MRSA colonisation in patients admitted with TB in the endemic human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) area and to describe the dynamics of transmission and the possible patterns of resistance among the MRSA isolates (Heysell *et al.*, 2011). Interestingly, 90% of all isolates of *S. aureus* from the nares of the HIV-infected patients co-infected with TB were MRSA (Heysell *et al.*, 2011). Nosocomial transmission was suggested by similarities of antibiotic resistance, previous history of hospitalisation and a possible further acquisition during hospitalisation (Heysell *et al.*, 2011).

2.5.1 Healthcare-associated MRSA and Community-associated MRSA

Methicillin resistant *S. aureus* was considered as a healthcare-associated pathogen, until the first case of CA-MRSA infection was reported in 1982 in drug-addicted patients who had not been hospitalised earlier (Nastaly *et al.*, 2010). In 1993, a high incidence of CA-MRSA was reported from the remote Kimberley region of Western Australia, this prompted a review of surveillance data from 1983 to 1992, which indicated a major increase in all the regions of the state (Udo *et al.*, 1993; Riley and Rouse, 2005; Nastaly *et al.*, 2010). In 1999, the CDC reported the death of four children due to CA-MRSA infection (Nastaly *et al.*, 2010). The rapid spread of CA-MRSA has been reported in almost all geographical regions of the world since 1982 (Bassetti *et al.*, 2009). The spread of CA-MRSA is more prominent in the USA and this has been attributed to the USA300 strain (Otto, 2012). The success and spread of CA-MRSA, in particular the USA300 strain, is believed to be due to its higher virulence and transmissible features, compared to the traditional HA-MRSA (Otto, 2012; Udo, 2013). The gene spermidine acetyltransferase (*speG*) is found in the arginine catabolic mobile element (ACME) of the USA300 strain (Joshi *et al.*, 2011; Otto, 2012; Hellmark *et al.*, 2013). The *speG* gene is responsible for the transfer of resistance to spermidine (aliphatic cation that are synthesised by all living organisms) and other polyamine molecules produced by living cells, except for *S. aureus* (Otto, 2012). Polyamine hypersensitivity differentiates *S. aureus* from other bacteria and is exhibited by all tested strains excluding those belonging to the group of USA300 strains (Joshi *et al.*, 2011). It has been suggested that the *speG* may be responsible for the high colonisation capacity of the USA300 strain (Otto, 2012). Table 2.2 shows the clinical and genetic differences between HA-MRSA and CA-MRSA.

Table 2.2: Clinical and genetic differences between HA-MRSA and CA-MRSA strains

Characteristics	HA-MRSA	CA-MRSA
Clinical manifestation	Pneumonia, urinary tract, blood stream, surgical site (Chavez and Decker, 2008; Robinson <i>et al.</i> , 2008)	Skin and soft tissue infections “spider bite”, necrotising pneumonia, sepsis (Chavez and Decker, 2008; Robinson <i>et al.</i> , 2008)
Risk groups	Elderly people, healthcare workers, preterm neonate, long-term hospitalised patients (Chavez and Decker, 2008; Robinson <i>et al.</i> , 2008)	Young drug users, prisoners, athletes, soldiers, men who have sex with men, selected ethnic populations (Chavez and Decker, 2008; Robinson <i>et al.</i> , 2008)
Transmission	Person-to-person spread: healthcare staff (nurses, doctors, surgeons) Environment-to-person spread (hospital equipment) (Chavez and Decker, 2008; Robinson <i>et al.</i> , 2008)	Person-to-person spread: shared facilities (towels, pools) Environment-to-person spread (shared sports equipment) (Chavez and Decker 2008; Robinson <i>et al.</i> , 2008)
Resistance to antimicrobial agent	Resistant to multiple antibiotics (Frey <i>et al.</i> , 2003)	Susceptible to multiple antimicrobial agents, β -lactam resistant (Frey <i>et al.</i> , 2003; Hauang <i>et al.</i> , 2006)
SCCmec types	I, II, III and VI (Valsesia <i>et al.</i> , 2010).	IV, V, VII, VIII, IX, X and XI (Kennedy and DeLeo, 2009; Valsesia <i>et al.</i> , 2010)
PVL production	Produced by both HA-MRSA and CA-MRSA (David and Daum, 2010)	Produced by both HA-MRSA and CA-MRS (David and Daum, 2010)
Main strain type	USA100 and USA200 (Bassetti <i>et al.</i> , 2009)	USA300 and USA400 (Bassetti <i>et al.</i> , 2009)

Two main hypotheses suggested that the high virulence of CA-MRSA strains are the increase in the expression of the core genome-encoded virulence genes, such as cytolysins, α -toxin, other virulent determinants and most likely the presence of the Panton-Valentine leukocidin (PVL) (Vandenesch *et al.*, 2003; Liu, 2009; Otto 2012). However, the role of the PVL gene remains controversial due to its presence in HA-MRSA and MSSA (Salaam-Dreyer, 2010).

Panton-Valentine leukocidin was discovered in 1894 by Van de Velde and was linked to SSTIs by Panton and colleagues in 1932 (David and Daum, 2010). At the onset of the CA-MRSA outbreak epidemics, PVL was found in all CA-MRSA strains, while it was mostly absent in HA-MRSA strains (Vandenesch *et al.*, 2003; Otto 2010). Schlievert *et al.* (2010) reported that CA-MRSA (USA300 and USA400) and community-associated methicillin sensitive *S. aureus* (CA-MSSA) often produce high inflammatory cytolysins, such as α -toxin, γ -toxin, δ -toxin and the PVL toxin. New findings by researchers pose major doubt regarding the role of PVL as a virulence factor in CA-MRSA disease (Otto, 2010; Otto, 2012). New strains of CA-MRSA have been discovered, which lacks the PVL gene and still show significant virulence characteristics (Otto, 2012). Isogenic PVL gene deletion mutants also

did not confirm the impact of PVL on CA-MRSA virulence in various animal models (Otto, 2012). However, Löffler *et al.* (2010) reported that the expression of PVL by staphylococcal strains confers strong cytotoxicity against neutrophils isolated from human cells, but not in Java monkey or simian cells.

2.5.2 Important global MRSA clones

Various clones have been discovered, since the detection of the first MRSA isolates in 1959 (DeLeo and Chambers, 2009; Otto, 2010). The human-associated *S. aureus* strains can be grouped into ten main clonal complex lineages and various minor lineages (Lindsay *et al.*, 2012; McCarthy and Lindsay, 2012). However, the MRSA strains detected worldwide belong to only five major clonal complexes (CC5, CC8, CC22, CC30 and CC45) (Figure 2.3) (Diep *et al.*, 2006; Otto, 2012).

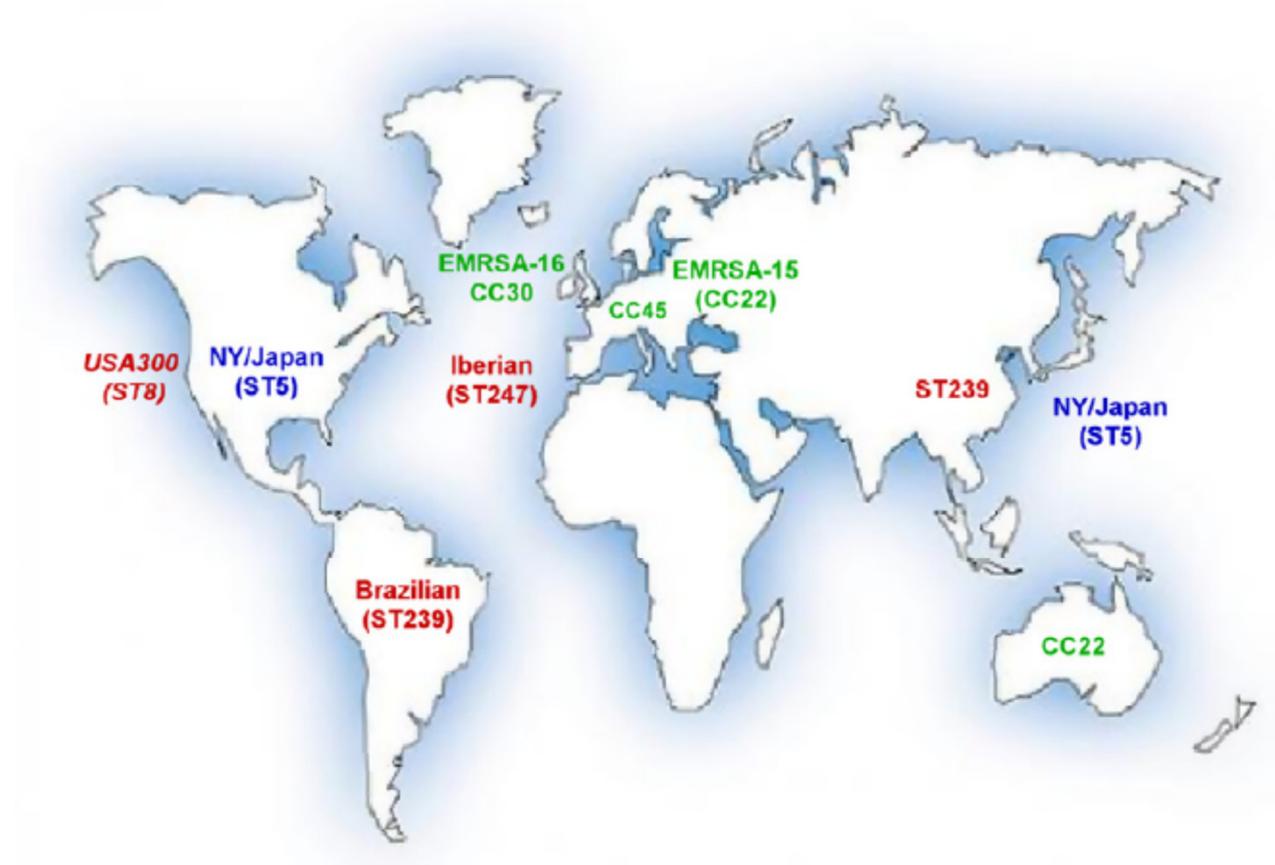


Figure 2.3: The important global MRSA clones which is currently predominant in large geographical locations around the world. Most clones belong to clonal complexes 5 (shown in blue) or 8 (shown in red). Other predominant clones belong to CCs 22, 30 and 45 (Otto, 2012)

Well-known MRSA clones include (i) the archaic clone *spa* types t008, t009, t194-SCC*mec*I [Sequence type 250 (ST250)] [clonal complex 8 (CC8)] discovered in the UK in the 1960s; (ii) the Iberian clone *spa* types t008, t051, t052, t054, t200-SCC*mec*IA-ST247(CC8) that was reported from Spain in 1989; (iii) the Brazilian clone *spa* types t030, t037, t234, t387, t388-SCC*mec*IIIA-ST239(CC8) reported in Brazil in 1992; (iv) the epidemic methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* EMRSA-16 clone *spa* types t018, t253, t418, t419-SCC*mec*II-ST36(CC30) that was reported in the UK in 1993 and (v) the New York/Japan clone *spa* types t001, t002, t003, t010, t045, t053, t062, t105-SCC*mec*II-ST5(CC5) that was reported in the US in 1998 (Yamamoto *et al.*, 2010; Campanile *et al.*, 2010). Other important clones are the Berlin, Hungarian, Paediatric and the Russian clones, all of which lacking the PVL gene (Yamamoto *et al.*, 2010). The Iberian, Hungarian, EMRSA-15, Brazilian, NewYork/Japan and paediatric clones are described as the pandemic clones due to their dissemination internationally (Aires de Sousa *et al.*, 2005; Yamamoto *et al.*, 2010).

Shittu *et al.* (2011) reported four clones of MRSA in the South-West of Nigeria (*spa* type t451-SCC*mec*V-ST8; *spa* type t008-SCC*mec*IV-ST94; *spa* type t002-SCC*mec*V-ST5 and *spa* type t064-SCC*mec*V-ST8). Moodley *et al.* (2010) identified five major clones in South Africa [(PFGE type A-*spa* type t045-SCC*mec*I-ST5(CC5), PFGE type D-*spa* type t037-SCC*mec*III-ST239(CC8), PFGE type F-*spa* type t064-SCC*mec*IV-ST612(CC8), PFGE type K-*spa* type t012-SCC*mec*II-ST612(CC8) and PFGE type T-*spa* type t012-SCC*mec*II-ST36(CC30)]. The five major clones identified by Moodley and colleagues (2010) were widespread in South Africa. However, type PFGE-D-*spa* type t037-SCC*mec*III-ST239 (CC8) was not detected in the Eastern and Western Cape provinces (Moodley *et al.*, 2010). During March 2001 to August 2003, Shittu and colleagues (2009b) performed a study on 61 MRSA isolates obtained from 13 healthcare institutions in the KwaZulu-Natal (KZN) province, South Africa. Three major PFGE pulsotypes were reported [PFGE type A-*spa* type t064-SCC*mec*IV-ST1173, PFGE type F-*spa* type t037-SCC*mec*III-ST239 and PFGE type G-*spa* type t045-SCC*mec*III-ST5] (Shittu *et al.*, 2009b). The pandemic clone t037-ST239-SCC*mec*III, which was found in Brazilian hospitals, was also identified by Shittu *et al.* (2009b) and Moodley and colleagues (2010) in South Africa. Makgotlho *et al.* (2009) reported a prevalence of 67% (65/97) of SCC*mec*II, 14.4% (14/97) of SCC*mec* type III and 4% (4/97) of SCC*mec*IVd in MRSA isolates obtained from the Steve Biko Academic Hospital in Pretoria, South Africa. The *spa* types, sequence types (ST) and PFGE types were not provided by Makgotlho *et al.* (2009). Hence there is a paucity of information regarding the

spa types, ST/CC and the pulsotypes of MRSA circulating in the Pretoria region of South Africa.

2.6 Pathogenesis and virulence of MRSA strains

Staphylococcus aureus is associated with virulence factors that allow the bacterium to survive severe conditions in the human host (Liu, 2009). Infections of *S. aureus* are established by various surface proteins called the microbial surface components recognising adhesive matrix molecules (MSCRAMMs), which mediates adherence to the host's tissue (Gordon and Lowy, 2008). Colonisation by MRSA is enhanced by biofilm formation, surface adhesins and antiphagocytic microcapsules (Skrupky *et al.*, 2009). Once an infection is established, *S. aureus* produces a variety of virulence factors that mediate disease (Skrupky *et al.*, 2009). Figure 2.4 shows some of the virulence factors produced by *S. aureus* strains.

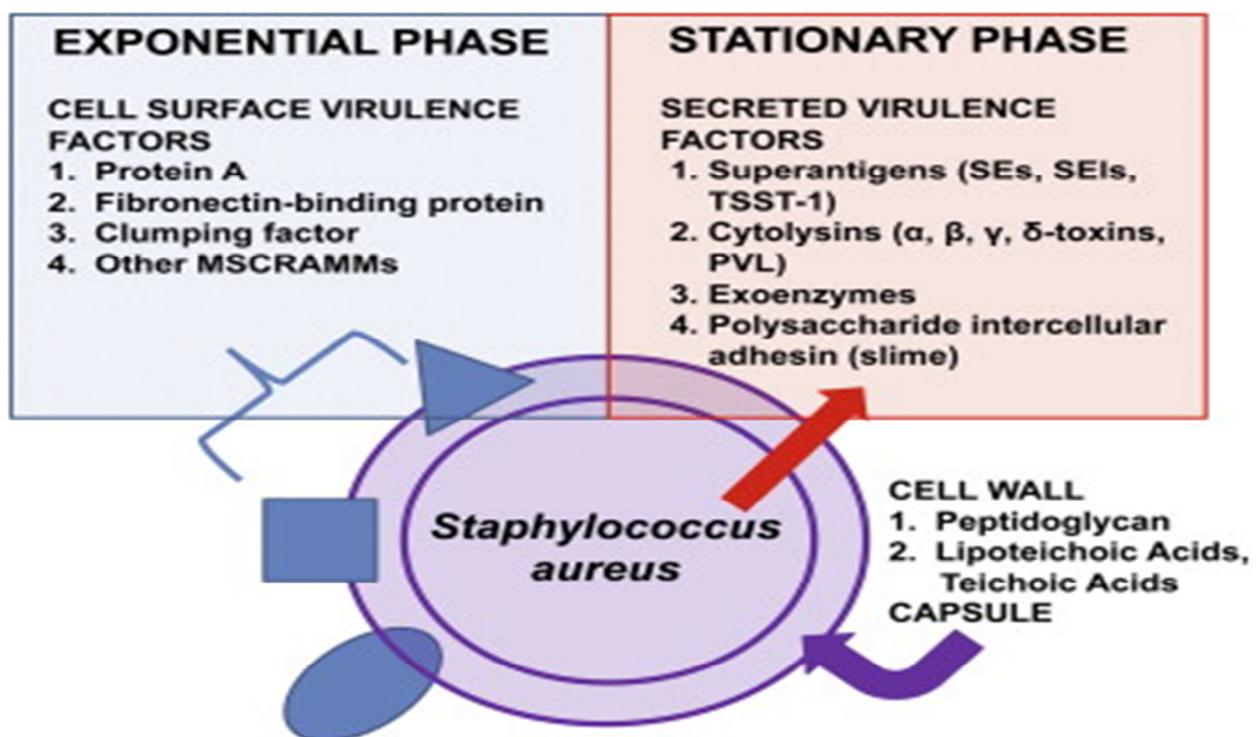


Figure 2.4: Virulence factors produced by *S. aureus* strains. The bacteria produce cell surface virulence factors (microbial surface components recognising the adhesive matrix molecules, MSCRAMMs) during the exponential phase, while producing exoproteins and exopolysaccharides during the post exponential/stationary phase (Schlievert *et al.*, 2010)

The newly discovered SasX protein, which is encoded on a mobile genetic element and occurs in ST239 MRSA strains are the most common source of MRSA infection in Asia (Otto, 2012). The SasX protein has been shown to play a major role in the formation of biofilms,

nasal colonisation, immune evasion and virulence in animal models (Otto, 2012). The SasX protein has been described as an important factor responsible for the pathogenic success and spread of the ST239 strains (Otto, 2012). Table 2.3 shows selected *Staphylococcus aureus* virulence factors and associated clinical syndromes.

Table 2.3: Selected *Staphylococcus aureus* virulence factors: arginine catabolic mobile elements (ACME), community-associated methicillin resistant *S. aureus* (CA-MRSA), chemotaxis inhibitory protein of staphylococci (CHIPS) and extracellular adherence protein (Eap) (Gordon and Lowy, 2008)

Type of virulence factors	Selected factors	Genes	Associated clinical syndromes
Involved in attachment	MSCRAMMS (e.g., clumping factors, fibronectin-binding proteins, collagen and bone sialoprotein-binding protein)	<i>clfA</i> , <i>clfB</i> , <i>fnbA</i> , <i>fnb</i> , <i>can</i> , <i>sdr</i> , <i>bbp</i>	Endocarditic, osteomyelitis, septic arthritis, prosthetic-device and catheter infections
Involved in persistence	Biofilm accumulation (polysaccharide intracellular adhesion), small-colony variants and intracellular persistence	<i>ica</i> locus, <i>hemB</i> mutation	Relapsing infections and cystic fibrosis
Involved in evasion/destruction of host defences	Leukocidins (eg, PVL and γ -toxin) capsular polysaccharide, Protein A, CHIPS, Eap and phenol-soluble modulins	<i>lukS</i> -PV, <i>lukF</i> -PV, <i>hlg</i> , <i>cap</i> 5 and 8 gene clusters, <i>spa</i> , <i>chp</i> , <i>eap</i> , <i>psm</i> - α gene cluster	Invasive skin infections and necrotising pneumonia (CA-MRSA strains that cause these often harbour the PVL toxin gene) and abscesses (associated with capsular polysaccharide)
Involved in tissue invasion / penetration	Proteases, lipases, nucleases, hyaluronate lyase, phospholipase C and metalloproteases (elastase)	<i>v8</i> , <i>hysA</i> , <i>hla</i> , <i>plc</i> , <i>sepA</i>	Tissue destruction and metastatic infections
Involved in toxin-mediated disease and sepsis	Enterotoxins, toxic shock syndrome toxin, exfoliative toxins A and B, α -toxin, peptidoglycan and lipoteichoic acid	<i>sea</i> - <i>q</i> (no <i>sef</i>), <i>tstH</i> , <i>eta</i> , <i>etb</i> , <i>hla</i>	Food poisoning, toxic shock syndrome, scalded skin syndrome, bullous impetigo and sepsis syndrome
With poorly defined role in virulence	Coagulase, ACME and bacteriocin	<i>Arc</i> cluster, <i>opp-3</i> cluster, <i>bsa</i>	

Expression of virulence factors in *S. aureus* is controlled by a complex staphylococcal regulatory network, namely the accessory gene regulator (*agr*) system (Gould *et al.*, 2012). These genes are known to vary between strains (Gould *et al.*, 2012). The up- and down-regulation of secreted factors occur when the *agr* gene is active (Skrupky *et al.*, 2009). It has been suggested that the arginine catabolic mobile element (ACME) may play a role in the pathogenesis of *S. aureus* by conferring an enhanced ability of CA-MRSA strains to colonise the skin of healthy people (David and Daum, 2010). This enables CA-MRSA strains to

spread more easily in the community (David and Daum, 2010). Though, no scientific data exist to support this hypothesis (David and Daum, 2010).

The Brazilian epidemic clonal complex (BECC A₁) strain was compared to MSSA and sporadic MRSA clones in an *in vitro* experiment (Gordon and Lowy, 2008). The BECC A₁ strains formed biofilms and shared an increasing ability to adhere to polystyrene, epithelial bronchial cells and were able to invade cells (Amaral *et al.*, 2005).

2.7 Antimicrobial resistance of MRSA

A major public health concern, particularly in tertiary hospitals and other healthcare settings is the rise of antibiotic resistant bacteria (Mulvey and Simor, 2009). Ribosomal RNA or genes in bacteria, encodes proteins that makes it possible for bacteria to become resistant against the actions of antibiotics (Mulvey and Simor, 2009). This resistance can either be acquired or intrinsic (Mulvey and Simor, 2009). The evolution of resistance in *S. aureus* emerged in the 1940s after the introduction of penicillin (Stefani and Goglio, 2010). Penicillin resistant clone type 80/81, which is now known as the ST30-CA-MRSA-IV Southwest clone type, emerged in the 1950s with the production of PVL and caused serious infections in hospitals and communities (Stefani and Goglio, 2010). Methicillin resistant *S. aureus* is synonymous with multi-drug resistant *S. aureus* because many MRSA strains have developed resistance to a wide range of antibiotics (Foster, 2004, Shittu *et al.*, 2009b). Hence, the most important antibiotic resistance mechanism acquired by *S. aureus* strains is methicillin resistance, which is now associated with multi-drug resistance (Stefani and Goglio, 2010). Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains are seen all around the world due to clonal spread (Stefani and Goglio, 2010; Liu *et al.*, 2012).

2.7.1 Penicillin resistance of MRSA

Penicillin was the first antibiotic used for the treatment of *S. aureus* infections (Barber and Rowzwadowska-Dowzenko, 1948; Otto 2012). In 1944, Kirby demonstrated that penicillin was inactivated by penicillin resistant *S. aureus* strains (Lowy, 2003; Gaze *et al.*, 2008). It is estimated that about 90% to 95% of clinical *S. aureus* strains are resistant to penicillin worldwide (Sakoulas and Moellering, 2008). Resistance to penicillin is due to the production of penicillinase, a β -lactamase, which was discovered before the clinical use of penicillin

(Otto, 2012). This enzyme is often produced by staphylococci when the bacterial cells are exposed to a β -lactam antibiotic, an agent which includes penicillin and its derivatives (Kernodle, 2000). Staphylococcal resistance to penicillin is mediated by the *blaZ* gene which encodes the extracellular enzyme β -lactamase (Lowy, 2003). The enzyme β -lactamase, hydrolyses the beta-lactam ring of penicillin, rendering the antibiotic inactive (Lowy, 2003; Malachowa and DeLeo, 2010). The *blaZ* gene, is a transposable gene located on a plasmid (*pBw15*) and transposon *Tn4002* (Gillespie *et al.*, 1988; Makgotlho *et al.*, 2009). The *blaZ* gene is controlled by two adjacent regulatory genes *blaR1* and *blaI* (Lowy 2003; Malachowa and DeLeo, 2010). It has been documented that 96% of all *S. aureus* strains carry the β -lactamase plasmid (McMurray *et al.*, 1990).

2.7.2 Methicillin resistance of MRSA

Methicillin is a penicillin derivative that was developed in 1959 by Beecham laboratories for the treatment of infections caused by penicillin resistant *S. aureus* (Kennedy and DeLeo, 2009). Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* occurs when methicillin sensitive *S. aureus* (MSSA) strains exogenously acquire the *SCCmec*, which is transmitted among staphylococcal species as a mobile element (Hanssen and Ericson Solid, 2006; Tsubakishita *et al.*, 2010). Staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* in *S. aureus* strains usually integrates at a unique sequence site of the chromosome called the bacterial chromosomal attachment site (*attB_{scc}*) (Hiramatsu *et al.*, 2001; Ito *et al.*, 2001; Turlej *et al.*, 2011). Resistance to β -lactams seen in MRSA strains, results from the expression of the PBP2a protein (penicillin binding protein) encoded in the *mecA* gene, which resides on the staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* (*SCCmec*) (Zapun *et al.*, 2007). The PBP2a is a high molecular weight class B transpeptidase which has a low affinity for all β -lactam agents and catalyses a transpeptidation reaction, which is an important step in the cross-linkage of peptidoglycan chains (Lowy 2003; Chen *et al.*, 2009; Marais *et al.*, 2009). The transpeptidation reaction involves the formation of acyl enzyme intermediate which is comparable to that seen in other serine transferases such as trypsin (Lupoli *et al.*, 2011).

Eleven *SCCmec* types have been recognised, with all sharing similarities in their backbone structure (Turlej *et al.*, 2011). The backbone structure of the different *SCCmec* types are characterised by the presence of the *mec* gene complex (Turlej *et al.*, 2011). The *mec* gene complex encodes the *mecA*, the *ccr* gene complex encodes site-specific recombinase(s) used

for the movement of the element and the three regions, which borders the *ccr* and *mec* gene complex known as the joining region (J) (Hiramatsu *et al.*, 2001; Chongtrakool *et al.*, 2006; Tsubakishita *et al.*, 2010; Turlej *et al.*, 2011). The *mec* complex is divided into four classes A, B, C and D by the absence or presence of insertion sequences (ISs) in the *mecR1* gene, though all *mec* gene complexes possess the IS431R found downstream of the *mecA* gene (Figure 2.5) (Tsubakishita *et al.*, 2010).

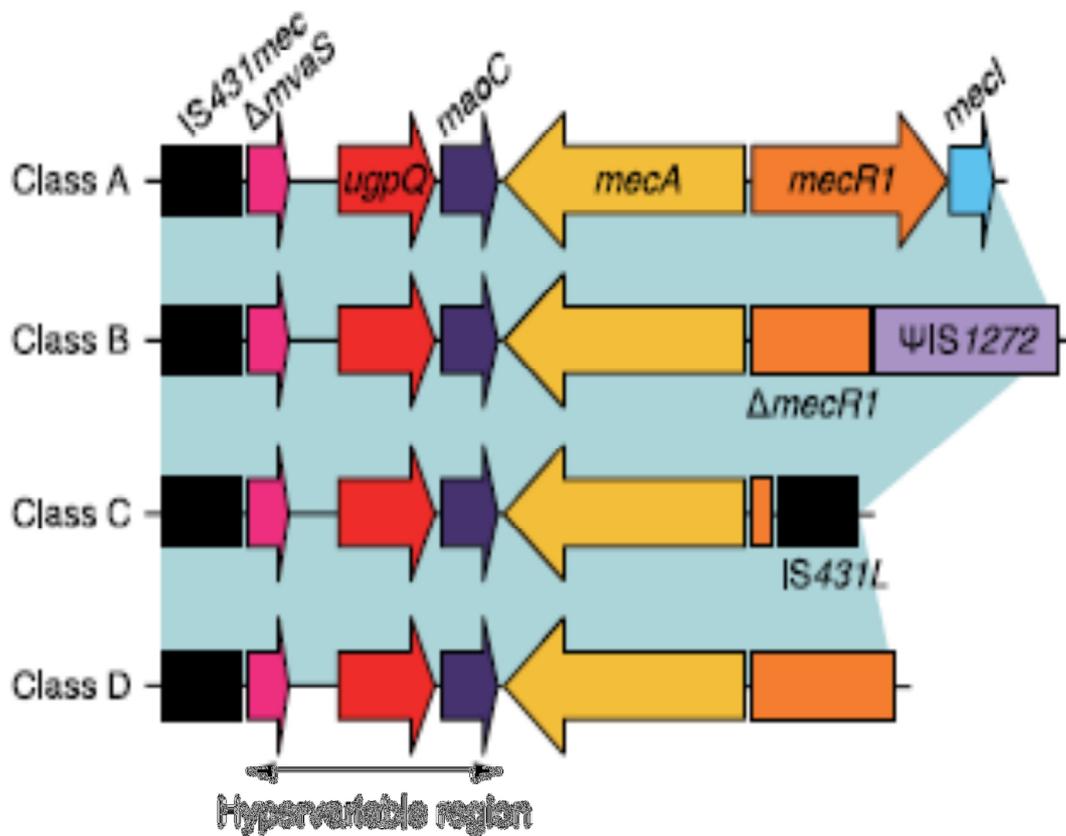


Figure 2.5: Basic structure of the representative *mec* gene complexes. The class A *mec* gene complex is composed of intact *mecRI* and *mecI* genes, encoding the signal transducer and repressor of the *mecA* gene, respectively. The class B and C *mec* gene complexes have ψ IS1272 and IS431L integrated in *mecRI* respectively, which resulted in the partial deletion of the *mecRI* and complete deletion of the *mecRI* genes. Class D has no IS element, but parts of the *mecRI* gene and complete *mecI* genes are deleted. All *mec* gene complexes contain IS431*mec* (also called IS431R) (Tsubakishita *et al.*, 2010)

The class A *mec* complex is referred to as a prototype structure with the gene order IS431*mec*-*mecA*-*mecRI*-*mecI*, while classes B, C and D are derived from the class A *mec* gene complex (Katayama *et al.*, 2000; Tsubakishita *et al.*, 2010). Regulatory elements *mecI* and *mecRI* control the transcription of the *mecA* gene (Tsubakishita *et al.*, 2010). The *mecRI*, a membrane-bound signal transduction protein, senses the presence of β -lactams and activates

its cytoplasmic domain (Zapun *et al.*, 2007). The cleavage of the *mecI* repressor occurs when the intracellular domain of *mecRI* is activated (Zapun *et al.*, 2007). A new *mecA* homologue designated as *mecC/mecA_{LGA251}* was described in *S. aureus* (Medhus *et al.*, 2013). The occurrence of the *mecC* gene has been confirmed in different countries in Northern Europe (UK, Denmark, Ireland, Germany, France, Sweden and Norway) (Medhus *et al.*, 2013).

There are two *ccr* gene complexes, one which carries two adjacent *ccr* genes, *ccrA* and *ccrB* and the other carries the *ccrC* gene (Turlej *et al.*, 2011). The *ccrC* gene is carried by only the SCC*mec* type III, V and VII (Kennedy and DeLeo, 2009). The largest SCC*mec* element is the SCC*mec* type III, which is composed of two cassettes, the SCC*mercury* (*ccrC*) and SCC*mec* type III (*ccrAB*) (Zhang *et al.*, 2012). The variations in the J regions (J1, J2 and J3) are used for subtyping SCC*mec* type IV (Turlej *et al.*, 2011; Medina *et al.*, 2012). The J1 region is located between the chromosomal left junction and the *ccr* complex, while the J2 is the region from the *ccr* genes to the *mec* complex (Medina *et al.*, 2012). The J3 is the region between the *mec* complex to the left *orfX* of the SCC*mec* (Deurenberg *et al.*, 2009; Medina *et al.*, 2012).

The SCC*mec* element can be typed and subtyped into eleven different types and eleven (SCC*mec* type IV) subtypes, which differ in size, such as SCC*mec* type I (34.3 kb), type II (53.0 kb), type III (66.9 kb), type IV ranging from 20.9 to 24.3 kb, type V (28.0 kb), type VI (24.0 kb), VII (41.3 kb), type VIII (32 kb), type IX (43.7 kb), X (50.8 kb) and XI (30.0 kb) (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008; Vanderhaeghen *et al.*, 2012). The SCC*mec* element is characterised as follows: type I (class B *mec* gene complex and *ccrAB* type 1), type II (class A *mec* gene complex and *ccrAB* type 2), type III (class A *mec* gene complex and *ccrAB* type 3), type IV (class B *mec* gene complex and *ccrAB* type 2), type V (class C2 *mec* gene complex and *ccrC*), type VI (class B *mec* gene complex and *ccrAB* type 4), type VII (class C *mec* gene complex and *ccrC*), type VIII (class A and *ccrAB* type 4), type IX (class C *mec* gene complex and *ccrA1B1*), type X (class C *mec* gene complex and *ccrA1B6*) and type XI (class E *mec* gene complex and *ccrA1B3*) (Hanssen and Ericson Sollid 2006; Turlej *et al.*, 2011; Laurent *et al.*, 2012). Figure 2.6 shows the classification scheme for SCC*mec* scheme for SCC*mec* types by *mec* complex type and *ccr* complex.

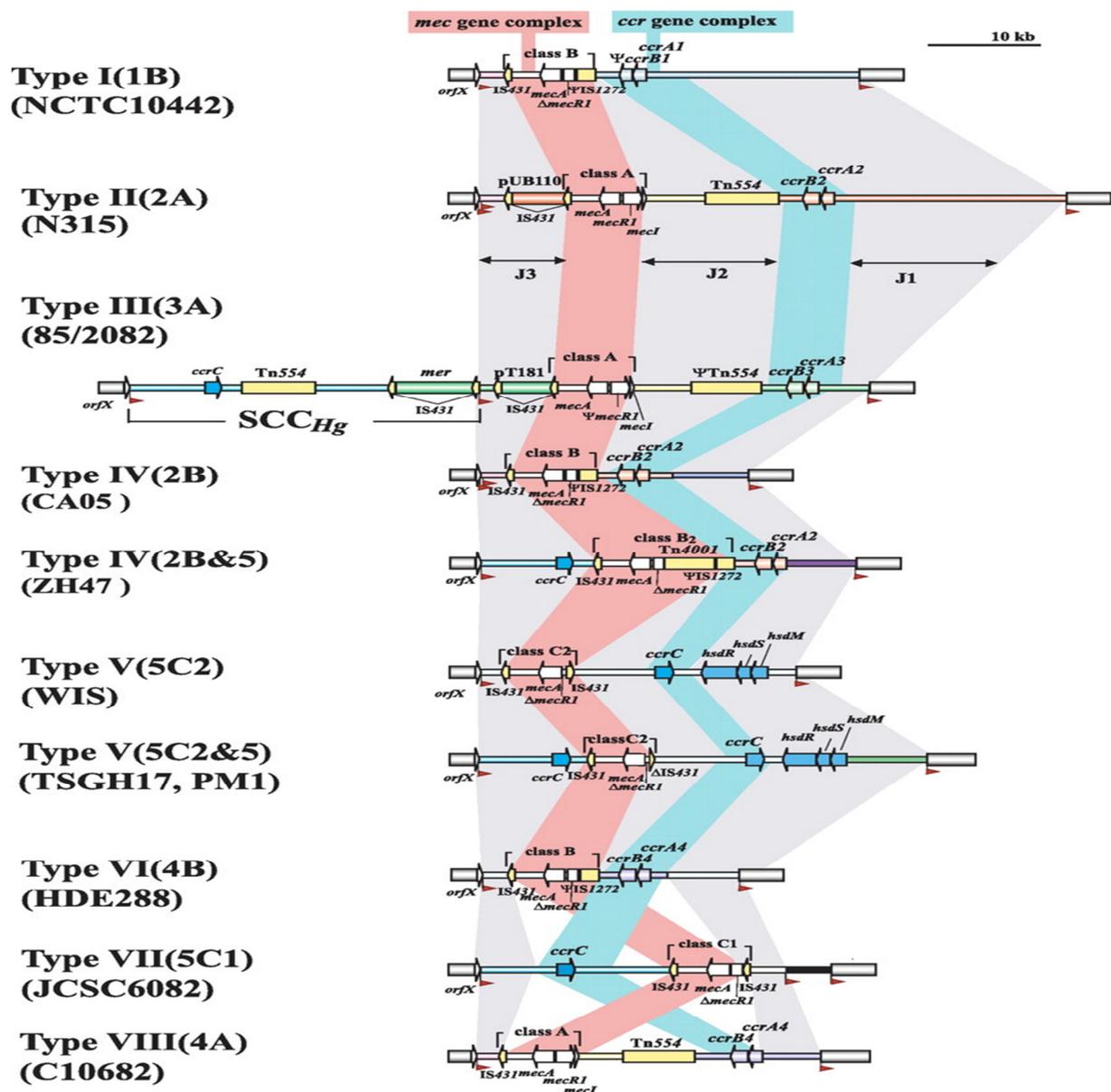


Figure 2.6 Classification scheme for SCCmec types by mec complex and ccr complex type of MRSA (David and Daum, 2010)

The SCCmec types I, IV, V, VI and VII are resistant to β -lactam antibiotics (penicillins, cephalosporins, monobactams and carbapenems), while SCCmec type II, III and VIII are resistant to multiple classes of antibiotics (tetracycline, lincosamide, tobramycin and streptogramin (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008; Sangappa and Thiagarajan, 2012). The SCCmec type IV (CA-MRSA) has been strongly linked with strains of MRSA causing infections in patients who have no HA-MRSA risk factors (David and Daum, 2010). The SCCmec type IV is regarded as the smallest and most mobile of the SCCmec types (Millheiriço *et al.*, 2007b). Due to the enhanced mobility of the SCCmec type IV eleven subtypes (IVa to IVk) which differ mainly in the J1 region have been described (Millheiriço *et*

al., 2007b; Turlej *et al.*, 2011). The SCCmec type IV is associated with CA-MRSA, it is also found in some nosocomial MRSA clones, such as the EMRSA-15 which is endemic in the UK (Millheiriço *et al.*, 2007b).

2.7.3 Vancomycin resistance of MRSA

Vancomycin is a glycopeptide, which was introduced in 1958 for the treatment of Gram-positive bacterial infections (Sakoulas, 2006; Tiwari, 2009). However, the use of vancomycin was minimised because of concerns about toxicity to certain organs, such as the kidney and liver (Sakoulas, 2006; Tiwari, 2009). The use of vancomycin as an antimicrobial has increased tremendously in the past 20 years, due to the rise in the prevalence of MRSA and CoNS (Tiwari, 2009). Reduced susceptibility seen in glycopeptides due to the selective pressure of the antibiotics from years of use has resulted in two different phenotypes: vancomycin-intermediate resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains (VISA) and heteroresistant vancomycin-intermediate *Staphylococcus aureus* (hVISA) (Stefani and Goglio, 2010). The *S. aureus* hVISA isolates are more often found than the VISA isolates (Nannini *et al.*, 2010). The hVISA strains are reported to have a small subpopulation of one bacterium per 10^5 to 10^6 colony units, which is able to grow at a vancomycin concentration of ≥ 4 $\mu\text{g/ml}$ (Nannini *et al.*, 2010). The first glycopeptide intermediate *S. aureus* (GISA/VISA) was isolated in a paediatric patient in Japan in 1996 (Sakoulas and Moellering, 2008). Though the incidence of VISA or vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (VRSA) remains low, there is an increase in reports of hVISA from different parts of the world (Song *et al.*, 2004). Shittu and Lin (2006) described the antimicrobial susceptibility patterns of 227 clinical isolates of *S. aureus* in the Kwazulu-Natal province of South Africa. All *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates were susceptible to vancomycin and 26.9% of isolates studied were confirmed as MRSA (Shittu and Lin, 2006). Glycopeptides act by inhibiting cell wall synthesis of *S. aureus* by binding with high affinity to the D-Ala-D-Ala C-terminus of late peptidoglycan precursors and using these precursors in transglycosylases, D, D-carboxypeptidases and transpeptidases (Figure 2.7) (Sakoulas and Moellering, 2008).

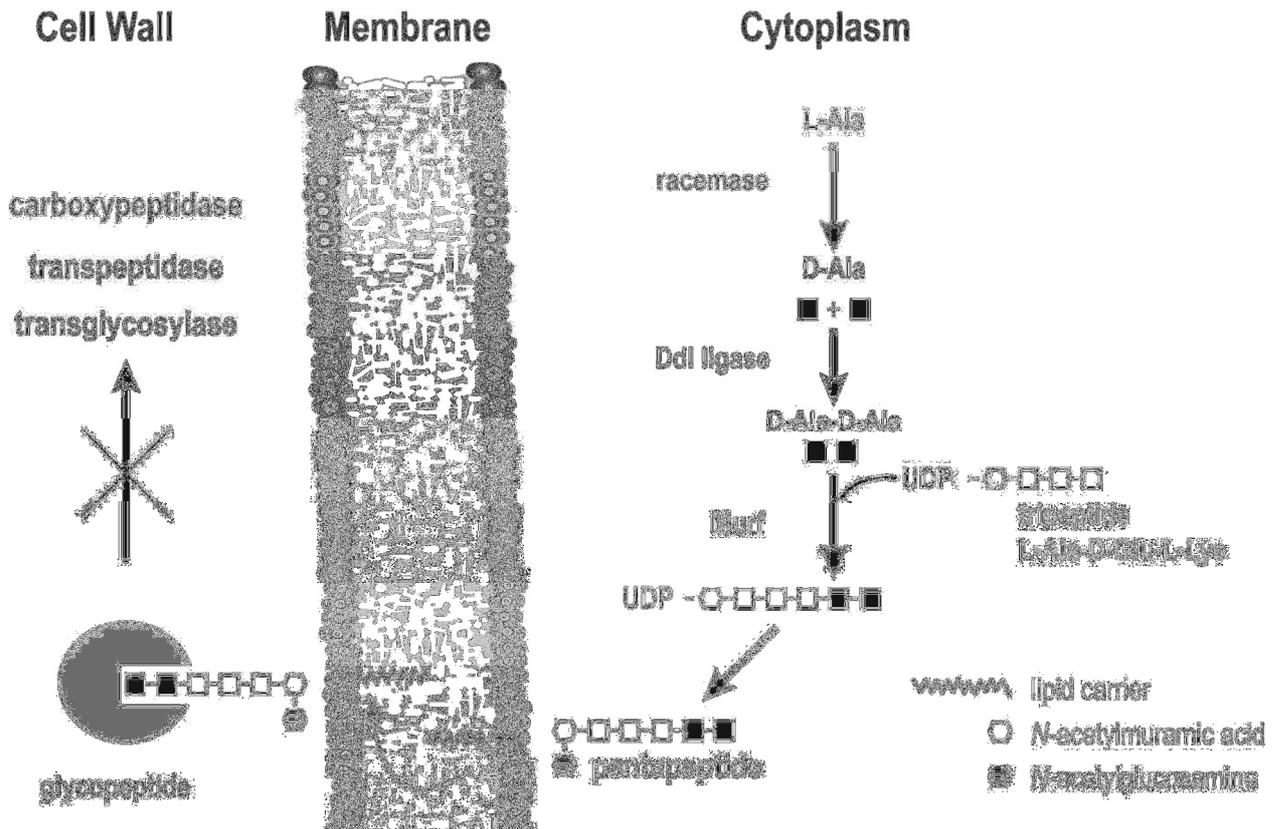


Figure 2.7: Peptidoglycan biosynthesis and mechanism of action of vancomycin. Binding of vancomycin to the C-terminal D-Ala-D-Ala of the late peptidoglycan precursors inhibits transglycosylases, transpeptidases and D,D-carboxypeptidases (Sakoulas and Moellering, 2008)

Researchers predicted that the acquisition of the *vanA* resistant gene by *S. aureus* from enterococci will lead to the emergence of highly VRSA (Tenover, 2006). It has been hypothesised that strains of *S. aureus* that express *agr* dysfunction may acquire an intrinsic survival advantage (Tsuji *et al.*, 2011). These strains often demonstrate vancomycin tolerance and a tendency to develop heterogeneous resistance under vancomycin selective pressure (Tsuji *et al.*, 2011). The prevalence of *agr* dysfunction among CA-MRSA is reported to be relatively low (3.5% to 9%) compared to HA-MRSA, which displays a high prevalence of *agr* dysfunction (Appelbaum 2007; Tsuji *et al.*, 2011). The established breakpoints given by Clinical and laboratory Standard Institute (2013) for vancomycin are: resistant (VRSA) ≥ 32 $\mu\text{g/ml}$, intermediate (VISA) 8 to 16 $\mu\text{g/ml}$ and susceptible ≤ 4 $\mu\text{g/ml}$.

2.8 Diseases caused by MRSA

Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* has undergone rapid changes in the past four decades, to become the main cause of healthcare and community-associated infections

worldwide (Boucher *et al.*, 2010). It has been estimated that MRSA accounts for >50% of all *S. aureus* infections in hospitals worldwide (Boucher *et al.*, 2010). Research showed that 80% of infections with CA-MRSA manifest with pyogenic skin infections and SSTI (Yamamoto *et al.*, 2010). Secondary infections seen with CA-MRSA include: endocarditis, brain abscesses, pelvic abscesses, osteomyelitis and arthritis (Yamamoto *et al.*, 2010).

Staphylococcus aureus is the most frequently isolated pathogen from all forms of blood stream infections (Shorr *et al.*, 2006; Del Rio *et al.*, 2009). A report of a positive blood culture for *S. aureus* should initiate an empiric MRSA antibiotic treatment regimen and follow-up blood cultures 48 h to 72 h later (Cosgrove and Fowler, 2008; Boucher *et al.*, 2010). Bacteraemia caused by MRSA poses a major clinical challenge, as infections due to MRSA are usually associated with a worse patient outcome compared to infections caused by MSSA (Rasmussen *et al.*, 2011).

Staphylococcus aureus is the principal cause of endocarditis that occurs in structurally normal heart valves (Lesse and Mylotte, 2006; Naber, 2009). An intravascular device (ID) is the most common source of nosocomial *S. aureus* infective endocarditis (Fowler, 1999; Naber, 2009). Patients suffering from *S. aureus* infective endocarditis (IE) are usually clinically debilitated and develop multiple organ failure, severe sepsis and major neurological complications (Cabell *et al.*, 2002; Nadji *et al.*, 2005; Del Rio *et al.*, 2009).

Other infections caused by *S. aureus* include toxic shock syndrome (TSS), staphylococcal food poisoning (SFP) and staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome (SSSS). Toxic shock syndrome is a multisystemic disease, which was first reported in 1978 (Ortega *et al.*, 2010). It is a disease that is characterised by the rapid onset of high fever, erythematous rash, mucosal hyperaemia, hypotension, desquamation and multi-organ involvement (Ortega *et al.*, 2010). Toxic shock syndrome became prominent in the early 1980s in association with the use of tampons, in previously healthy women (Lappin and Ferguson, 2009; Silversides *et al.*, 2010). Non-menstrual TSS seen in men, children and women has been associated with other staphylococcal enterotoxins following the growth of *S. aureus* in other body sites and the blood stream (Larkin *et al.*, 2009). *Staphylococcus aureus* produces various exotoxins that play a major role in the pathogenesis of TSS (Silversides *et al.*, 2010). These exotoxins are the staphylococcal enterotoxins (SEs), toxic shock syndrome toxin-1 (TSST-I) and the staphylococcal enterotoxin-like toxins (SEIs) (Silversides *et al.*, 2010). These toxins are all

virulence factors acting as superantigens (Silversides *et al.*, 2010). Staphylococcal food poisoning (SFP) is defined as the intoxication, which occurs from the consumption of food containing large amounts of one or more enterotoxins (Dinges *et al.*, 2000; Le Loir *et al.*, 2003; Argudin *et al.*, 2010). Symptoms associated with SFP are nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramps and diarrhoea, usually after a short incubation period (Le Loir *et al.*, 2003; Ortega *et al.*, 2010).

Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome (SSSS) is described as a life-threatening, blistering skin disease, which is caused by certain strains of *S. aureus* that produce an exfoliative toxin (ET) (Ruocco *et al.*, 2011). Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome is also known as Ritters von Ritterschein in infants less than one month old or Ritter's disease (Bukowski *et al.*, 2011). It is reported that three serotypes of ETs exist; the ETA, ETB and ETD serotypes (Nishifuji *et al.*, 2008; Yamamoto *et al.*, 2010). The ETA serotype is more prevalent in Africa, Europe and the USA and is expressed by over 80% of the toxin producing strains (Bukowski *et al.*, 2011). The ETA and ETB serotype cause SSSS in infants and bullous impetigo in children (Yamamoto *et al.*, 2010).

2.9 Treatment and prevention of MRSA infections

The world continues to look for urgent control measures of the pandemic H1N1 influenza virus, while the impact of pandemic MRSA infections continues to go virtually unnoticed (Jarvis, 2009). Infections caused by MRSA are associated with morbidity and mortality, linked with high personal and public cost (Beibei *et al.*, 2010).

Vancomycin (administered intravenously) remains a standard treatment regimen for patients with serious HA-MRSA and CA-MRSA infections, such as endocarditis, septic shock and osteomyelitis (Beibei *et al.*, 2010). However, the emergence of *S. aureus* isolates, which are resistant to vancomycin and the adverse effects noticed with the use of vancomycin have limited its use as a choice of treatment (Stryjewski and Corey, 2009; Beibei *et al.*, 2010). Linezolid (the first available oxazolidinone) is active against a broad range of antibiotic susceptible and resistant Gram-positive bacteria that include MRSA (Beibei *et al.*, 2010). Linezolid is used for the treatment of HA-MRSA and CA-MRSA infections as well as complicated skin and soft tissue infections and MRSA ventilator-associated pneumonia (Stryjewski and Corey, 2009). Commonly recommended inexpensive oral agents for the

treatment of CA-MRSA infections include: clindamycin, long-acting doxycycline, minocycline, co-trimoxazole and fusidic acid (DeLeo *et al.*, 2010).

Different countries apply different measures to control MRSA healthcare facility endemicity (Jarvis, 2009). In Denmark, Western-Australia and Holland HA-MRSA infections are kept at a low level by the successful application of active detection and isolation (ADI) measures (Jarvis, 2009). High-risk patients are screened for MRSA, barrier precautions are applied to those who are MRSA positive and healthcare worker hand hygiene is enforced (Muto *et al.*, 2003; Jarvis, 2009).

Human MRSA infections are classified into three groups based on their presumed sources; HA-MRSA, CA-MRSA and HA-MRSA with community inception (Price *et al.*, 2012). However, a recent classification has been added, which identifies human MRSA cases associated with exposure to livestock (LA-MRSA). Livestock-associated MRSA represents a unique clone characterised as ST398 by MLST typing (Golding *et al.*, 2010). The rapid spread of MRSA infection in the hospital, community and livestock shows that MRSA transmission occurs in everyday life, leisure activities, cross-border commuting, livestock transport and exposure to contaminated food products (Köck *et al.*, 2010). Hence, the right precautions, especially hand hygiene along with isolation, proper education and patient decolonisation in selected circumstances are major components of MRSA prevention and control (Humphreys *et al.*, 2009). Investigations are being carried out to develop vaccines, such as the capsular polysaccharide-protein conjugate vaccine and antibodies to the ligand-binding domains of various MSCRAMMS (Daum and Spellberg, 2012).

2.10 Diagnostic identification of MRSA from clinical specimens

Rapid and reliable methods for the identification of MRSA are important in order to make the right choice for therapy and to prevent the undue use of antibiotics (Kaya *et al.*, 2009). Identification of MRSA is based on phenotypic and genotypic methods (Taiwo, 2009). Phenotypic methods used for the identification of MRSA include culture (β -haemolytic white to yellowish colonies on blood agar), Gram-staining (provides a rough classification of the bacteria detected), the DNase test, the catalase test (differentiates between staphylococci and streptococci) and the coagulase test (differentiates *S. aureus* from other staphylococcal

species) (Weile and Knabbe, 2009; Kateete *et al.*, 2010). *Staphylococcus aureus* colonies are further subjected to various antimicrobial susceptibility testing methods, such as the disc diffusion, automated systems [Microscan (Dade Behring), Vitek2 (bioMérieux, Marcy l'Etoile, France) and BD Phoenix (Becton Dickinson)] and the latex agglutination kits, which are available commercially (Brown *et al.*, 2005; Taiwo, 2009). However, these phenotypic methods are time consuming and require two to three days for MRSA strains to be considered as positive (Kramer *et al.*, 2010).

Several molecular based techniques make use of the stable genotypic characteristics, which are not affected by *in vitro* testing conditions (Weile and Knabbe, 2009). These molecular methods are able to identify *S. aureus* strains carrying the *mecA* gene and by using typing assays the possible relationships between the strains can be determined (Kim, 2009).

2.10.1 Phenotypic methods for the characterisation of MRSA isolates

Detection of MRSA with culture media, such as blood agar has gradually been replaced with selective chromogenic agars, such as ChromID (bioMérieux, Marcy l'Etoile, France), MRSA select (Bio-Rad Laboratories, Belgium), CHROMagar MRSA (CHROMagar Microbiology, France; BD Diagnostics, Belgium) and MRSA Ident agar (Heipha GmbH, Eppelheim, Germany) (Malhotra-Kumar *et al.*, 2010). Some of these chromogenic agars are able to produce results within 24 h eliminating the need for further sub-culturing and biochemical tests (Malhotra-Kumar *et al.*, 2010).

Antibiotic susceptibility testing (AST) methods include the disc diffusion, E-test, broth microdilution and the agar screening method (Brown *et al.*, 2005; Taiwo, 2009; Karami *et al.*, 2011). The disc diffusion method (Kirby-Bauer) has proven to be a reliable method used for the detection of methicillin resistance in most routine laboratories (Taiwo, 2009). Karami *et al.* (2011) reported that the oxacillin disk diffusion test has limited accuracy and precision for the detection of MRSA. This is because some strains of *S. aureus* are referred to as borderline oxacillin resistant *S. aureus* (BORSA), which means that these bacteria are hyperproducers of β -lactamases (Mathew *et al.*, 2010). The BORSA strains usually appear as oxacillin resistant but do not possess the genetic mechanism for such resistance (Mathew *et al.*, 2010). The CLSI in 2006 recommended the use of ceftiofuran testing as a marker for the detection of methicillin resistance rather than the commonly used oxacillin, since ceftiofuran is a better

inducer of the *mecA* gene (Karami *et al.*, 2011). The heterogeneous nature of methicillin resistance in *S. aureus* restricts the precision of the phenotypic antimicrobial susceptibility testing methods used for the detection of MRSA (Kaya *et al.*, 2009). Another phenotypic method used for the detection of MRSA is the latex agglutination assay ((Malhotra-Kumar *et al.*, 2010). The latex agglutination assay is a rapid test, which is approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for the detection of *S. aureus* and MRSA isolates (Malhotra-Kumar *et al.*, 2010). Different studies have shown that the latex agglutination test has a 100% sensitivity and specificity (Cuevas *et al.*, 2003; Lee *et al.*, 2004). Though Brown *et al.* (2005) reported that any test, which involves the clumping factor might give false positive results.

The most commonly used automated systems include the BD Phoenix (Becton, Dickinson Germany), Vitek2 (bioMérieux Mary l'Etoile, France), Autobac (Pfizer, New York) and MicroScan system (Siemens, Sacramento, California) (Taiwo, 2009). Manufacturers of automated systems have adapted their instruments to maximise the detection of *mecA* resistance (Junkins *et al.*, 2009). Junkins and colleagues (2009) reported an improved accuracy of the Vitek2 (bioMérieux Mary l'Etoile, France) and Phoenix systems with the addition of cefoxitin, which was placed in the test panels to detect the *mecA* gene. Iraz *et al.* (2012) reported that automated systems for detection of MRSA were more accurate than other known phenotypic methods.

2.10.2 Molecular identification and characterisation assays for MRSA isolates

Molecular identification of infectious diseases is the fastest growing field of interest in most clinical diagnostic laboratories (Weile and Knabbe, 2009). There are various molecular methods available, each with unique advantages and disadvantages (Hall *et al.*, 2012). Molecular techniques, such as conventional and real-time polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assays (Conceição *et al.*, 2010) make use of the stable genotypic characteristics of bacteria (Weile and Knabbe, 2009). Genes, which may code for toxins help in defining the pathogenic characteristics of a bacterium (Weile and Knabbe, 2009). The genomes of bacteria provide useful information on conserved regions, which allows identification of bacterial species by using genotyping assays (Weile and Knabbe, 2009). The most important genotyping methods used for MRSA are SCC*mec* typing, staphylococcal protein A typing (*spa* typing), pulsed-field gel electrophoresis (PFGE) and multilocus sequence typing (MLST) (Conceição *et al.*, 2010). It has been suggested that harmonisation of the genotyping methods by using

standardised protocols is needed to establish surveillance networks and facilitate global MRSA control (Mehndiratta and Bhalla, 2012).

2.10.2.1 Conventional PCR assays for the detection of MRSA isolates

The use of conventional PCR assays in most clinical diagnostic laboratories is gradually replacing phenotypic methods, which are time consuming and labour intensive (Al-Talib *et al.*, 2009). Polymerase chain reaction assays have a shorter turn-around time compared to the phenotypic methods (Van Hal *et al.*, 2007). Pillai *et al.* (2012) reported that the frequently used phenotypic tests are not totally reliable for the detection of methicillin resistance in *S. aureus* due to the low level of sensitivity and specificity of these tests (Pillai *et al.*, 2012). Pillai *et al.* (2012) recommended the use of conventional PCR assays for the detection of the *mecA* gene due to rapidity, sensitivity and accuracy (Pillai *et al.*, 2012). Various PCR assays have been developed, which helps to identify the *Staphylococcus* genus, species, virulence factors and antibiotic resistance genes (Al-Talib *et al.*, 2009). Al-Talib *et al.* (2009) developed a pentaplex PCR assay, which was found to be rapid and gave results within 4 h, which is crucial for the detection of *Staphylococcus* species (Al-Talib *et al.*, 2009).

2.10.2.2 Real-time PCR assays for the detection of MRSA isolates

Although conventional PCR assays are more rapid than the phenotypic methods, it is still considered complex, since these assays require preparation and amplicon characterisation using gel electrophoresis (Suhaili *et al.*, 2009). The development of real-time PCR assays with the use of fluorescent-labelled probes with amplification techniques has made molecular assays in the clinical microbiology laboratory easier (Weile and Knabbe, 2009). Real-time PCR assays make use of fluorescent-labelled probes, such as Scorpion probes, TaqMan hydrolysis probes, fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET) and minor groove binding probes (Weile and Knabbe, 2009). The use of closed-tube systems in real-time PCR assays has limited the risk of contamination in clinical diagnostics (Weile and Knabbe, 2009). Real-time PCR assays are more rapid than conventional PCR assays; however, these assays are more expensive, cannot monitor amplicon size and have limited multiplexing capabilities because the number of channels varies between different real-time PCR platforms (Bankowski and Anderson, 2004; Conterno *et al.*, 2007).

2.10.2.3 Staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* typing of MRSA isolates

Staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* typing is used to differentiate *S. aureus* clones determined by MLST or PFGE typing (DeLeo and Chambers, 2009). The organisation of the *mecA* and different cassette chromosome recombinase (*ccr*) genes helps to dictate the specific SCC*mec* types (Kennedy and DeLeo, 2009). Variations seen in the J regions (three non-essential components of SCC*mec* element) within the same *mec-ccr* complex are used to define the SCC*mec* subtypes (Coombs *et al.*, 2010). A conventional or multiplex PCR (M-PCR) assay is used to determine the structural types of the SCC*mec* (Taiwo, 2009). The genetic diversity observed in MRSA and SCC*mec* subtypes provide evidence that supports the idea that the acquisition of the SCC*mec* by *S. aureus* occurred several times by horizontal gene transfer (Kennedy and DeLeo, 2009).

Various M-PCR assays have been developed over several years by different researchers (Ito *et al.*, 2001; Olivera and De Lencastre, 2002; Zhang *et al.*, 2005; Milheiriço *et al.*, 2007a; Milheiriço *et al.*, 2007b; Boye *et al.*, 2007; Kondo *et al.*, 2007; McClure *et al.*, 2010; Zhang *et al.*, 2012). Each SCC*mec* typing method targets different structures in the SCC*mec*, which makes it difficult for the various assays to agree with one another (Kim, 2009). Chongtrakool *et al.* (2006) suggested that the classification of the SCC*mec* element should be based on the *ccr* complex types. These authors also suggested that the classes of the *mec* gene and subtypes should be classified based on differences found within the J region (Chongtrakool *et al.*, 2006).

2.10.2.4 Staphylococcal protein A typing of MRSA isolates

Protein A was historically known as Jensen's antigen A and is one of the MSCRAMM surface proteins covalently anchored to the cell of *S. aureus* (Dossett *et al.*, 1969). The *spa* locus is composed of 2 150 bp with a molecular weight of 42 000 kilo Dalton (42 kDa) and carries the IgG fibronectin (Fc)-binding region and X-region (Majeed *et al.*, 2012). The Fc-binding region and the X-region found in the *spa* gene, code for protein A in *S. aureus* and contain different functional regions, which are highly polymorphic (Schmitz *et al.*, 1998). The Fc-binding region of the *spa* gene is made up of two to five repeat sequences (each 160 bp in size) and the X region is made up of 15 repeat sequences (each 24 bp in size) (Schmitz *et al.*, 1998). Frenay *et al.* (1994) developed the *spa* typing technique, which is based on the

variation of the polymorphic X region of *S. aureus* (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008). The polymorphic X region is located upstream of the region, which codes the cell wall attachment sequence (Ruppitsch *et al.*, 2006). Staphylococcal protein A typing has shown to have a discriminative power between that of PFGE and MLST (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008).

A public *spa* type database and the Ridom *spa* server with differential assignment are often used for naming the *spa* types (Yamamoto *et al.*, 2010). The Ridom StaphType (Ridom GmbH, Würzburg, Germany) software allows data management and retrieval. The software is used for the assignment of new *spa* types with an automatic quality control of DNA sequence chromatogrammes (Harmsen *et al.*, 2003). Currently, the *spa* server database consists of 5 501 *spa*-types, consisting of 311 *spa*-repeats from a total number of 92 900 isolates typed in 66 countries (Deurenberg *et al.*, 2009; Salaam-Dreyer, 2010). The *spa* typing technique has many practical advantages, which includes high throughput, less labour intensive than PFGE, reproducibility between laboratories and full portability of data (Struelens *et al.*, 2009). Staphylococcal protein A typing is the main typing method used to study the molecular evolution and outbreaks of MRSA (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008; Struelens *et al.*, 2009). Limitations associated with *spa* typing are the loss of discriminatory power, which were observed because of the related *spa* repeat patterns within different clonal lineages (Deurenberg *et al.*, 2009). This makes the use of additional typing techniques such as PFGE necessary (Kim, 2009).

2.10.2.5 Accessory gene regulator typing of MRSA isolates

The accessory gene regulator (*agr*) is the most comprehensively characterised two-component signal transducer in *S. aureus* (Gordon *et al.*, 2013). The *agr* locus is found on the *S. aureus* genome and is thought to be part of the core genome (Thoendel, 2012). Wesson *et al.* (1998) reported that *agr*-dependent factors mediate the induction of apoptosis by *S. aureus*. The locus of the *agr* system contains transcription elements and two promoters (P2 and P3) (Novick, 2003). The P2 transcript is coded by four genes known as *agrABCD*, which encode a two-component system and its auto-inducing peptide (AIP) (Novick, 2003; Nastaly *et al.*, 2010). The effector molecule of the *agr* system is a 514-nt transcript derived from the P3 promoter called RNA III, which also carries the *hld* cistron that codes for delta-haemolysin (Plata *et al.*, 2009). The products of the four genes establish a quorum-sensing mechanism, which activates the response regulators P2 (RNA III) and P3 (RNA III) (Novick *et al.*, 2003;

Nastaly *et al.*, 2010). The polymorphisms observed within the *agrBCDA* operons in *S. aureus* define four *agr* groups (*agr*-I, *agr*-II, *agr*-III and *agr*-IV). It is documented that 71% of all MRSA strains belong to *agr* group I, which makes it the most prevalent *agr* group worldwide (Nastaly *et al.*, 2010). The *agr* group II is usually isolated in patients with endocarditis, while TSST-1 producing MRSA strains belong to *agr* group III (Nastaly *et al.*, 2010). The exfoliatin producing strains, which cause SSSS, belong to *agr* group IV (Nastaly *et al.*, 2010).

2.10.2.6 Pulsed-field gel electrophoresis typing of MRSA isolates

The pulsed-field gel electrophoresis typing technique is regarded as the gold standard for the typing of MRSA strains (Conceição *et al.*, 2010). The PFGE typing technique was developed in 1983 by Schwartz and Cantor (Trindade *et al.*, 2003). The PFGE typing technique is a variation of conventional agarose gel electrophoresis in which an alternating electrical current is passed across the gel periodically (Mehndiratta and Bhalla, 2012). An international MRSA database was established by the CDC based upon PFGE profiles of genomic DNA digested with the endonuclease restriction enzyme (RE) *Sma*I (Kennedy and DeLeo, 2009). The band patterns obtained can be analysed with the GelComparII software using the Dice coefficient and unweighted pair group method with arithmetic mean (UPGMA) to construct a dendrogramme (Cerrone *et al.*, 2012). Clusters are often defined using 80% similarity as the cut-off value (DeLeo and Chambers, 2009). The unique banding pattern obtained for each *S. aureus* strain provides segregation into the specific USA or PFGE types (Kennedy and DeLeo *et al.*, 2009). The PFGE technique is accurate and has a high discriminatory power (Conceição *et al.*, 2010). The disadvantage of the PFGE typing technique is that it is time consuming, labour intensive and difficulty exist in comparing the results obtained in different laboratories due to variations in PFGE protocols (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008; Conceição *et al.*, 2010; Taiwo, 2009).

2.10.2.7 Multilocus sequence typing of MRSA isolates

Multilocus sequence typing (MLST) was first proposed in 1998 as a genotyping method, which enables the characterisation of bacterial isolates in a homogeneous, reproducible and convenient manner (Bravo and Procop, 2009). Multilocus sequence typing is a highly

discriminatory typing method, which has proven to be the best method to study the molecular evolution of *S. aureus* (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008). Multilocus sequence typing compares the nucleotide sequences of seven housekeeping genes present in all isolates of a particular known species (Singh *et al.*, 2006). The internal fragments (500 bp) of seven housekeeping genes of *S. aureus* [carbamate kinase (*arc*), shikimate dehydrogenase (*aroE*), glycerol kinase (*glpF*), guanylate kinase (*gmk*), phosphate acetyltransferase (*pta*) triosephosphate isomerase (*tpi*) and acetyl coenzyme A acetyltransferase (*yqiL*)] are sequenced (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008). The DNA sequences are compared to those already published on the MLST website (<http://www.mlst.net>) (Kim, 2009). The combination of alleles identified is unequivocally associated to a number that corresponds to the sequence type (Pantosti and Venditti, 2009). An MLST allelic profile of 3-3-1-12-4-4-16 is referred to as ST247 and an allelic profile of 2-2-2-2-3-3-2 is defined as ST36 (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008; Kim, 2009). The algorithm based upon repeated sequence types (BURST) is used to determine the clonal complexes (CCs) (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008). Isolates found in one CC have at least five of the seven housekeeping genes identical (Kim, 2009). A putative ancestor of a CC is defined as the sequence type with the largest number of single locus variants (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008).

Data from recent studies have suggested that recombination might occur more repeatedly within CCs than between CCs (Basic-Hammer *et al.*, 2010). To test this hypothesis and to understand how genetic diversity is produced in *S. aureus* Basic-Hammer *et al.* (2010) analysed 182 isolates of *S. aureus* with MLST and five core adhesion genes (*clfA*, *clfB*, *fnbA*, *map* and *sdrC*). The study by Basic-Hammer *et al.* (2010) did not confirm the suggestion that recombination occurs more frequently within CCs than between CCs (Basic-Hammer *et al.*, 2010). However, the study highlighted the significance of recombination on the evolution of highly clonal *S. aureus* strains (Basic-Hammer *et al.*, 2010). The study suggested that when recombination is pooled with demographic mechanisms and selection, it may favour the quick formation of new CCs (Basic-Hammer *et al.*, 2010). A disadvantage of MLST is that it is mostly suitable for research purposes since it is too expensive to be used as part of routine diagnostic analysis or for resource poor settings (Al Nakib *et al.*, 2011).

2.11 Summary

The bacteria belonging to the *Staphylococcus* genus are ubiquitous in nature and are colonisers of epithelial cells (Stefani *et al.*, 2012). *Staphylococcus aureus* is the most virulent species of the staphylococcal species due to the vast level of pathogenicity and virulence of this species in humans and animals (Otsuka *et al.*, 2007). It is reported that 20% to 30% of the world's population is constantly colonised with *S. aureus* in the anterior nares with 60% to 100% of individuals being transiently colonised at some point in their lives (Lamers, 2012). Resistance to β -lactam antibiotics and other antibiotics make the prevention and treatment of *S. aureus* difficult (Llarrull *et al.*, 2009). Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* is defined as a multi-drug resistant bacterium circulating in clinical settings (Khanna *et al.*, 2008). Previously, MRSA was established as a healthcare pathogen, but the emergence of the bacterium in the community has further heightened public health concerns (Liu, 2009).

The epidemiology of infectious diseases, such as MRSA infections depends on various typing methods used as tools for the characterisation and differentiation of isolates based on their phenotypic or genotypic characteristics (Faria *et al.*, 2008). Conventional methods used for screening MRSA strains are based on the use of culture with or without prior broth enrichment (Stürenburg, 2009). Susceptibility testing is usually performed with the disc diffusion method or with an automated system (Stürenburg, 2009). Although phenotypic methods, such as culture, catalase, coagulase and DNase tests are still regarded as standard methods in most clinical diagnostic laboratories, molecular based methods are highly sensitive and provide rapid results (Kennedy and DeLeo, 2009; Marlowe and Bankowski, 2011).

Different molecular typing techniques are applied for the typing of MRSA strains (Goering *et al.*, 2008). These molecular typing techniques include: SCC*mec*, *spa*, *agr*, PFGE and MLST typing (Faria *et al.*, 2008). The PFGE typing technique is regarded as an excellent technique for typing MRSA strains (Faria *et al.*, 2008). Compared to other typing techniques the PFGE has a good discriminatory power and interlaboratory exchange of data is possible when standardised protocols are used (Rasschaert *et al.*, 2009). The disadvantage of PFGE typing, especially in outbreaks, is that this technique is labour intensive and technically demanding (Narukawa *et al.*, 2009; Hallin *et al.*, 2012). Other rapid methods, such as the *spa*, *agr* and MLST typing techniques have gained popularity, since these methods are able to overcome

the disadvantages of the PFGE typing technique (Wolters *et al.*, 2011). These typing techniques offer good interlaboratory reproducibility and easy data handling (Wolters *et al.*, 2011). The *spa* typing technique has been shown to be an important method for outbreak investigation and studies for global population structure of MRSA strains (Wolters *et al.*, 2011). Multilocus sequence typing has resulted in various searchable databases of most clinically important species, such as *S. aureus* (Harris *et al.*, 2010). Multilocus sequence typing of MRSA isolates is useful for long term studies due to the low mutation rate of the seven housekeeping genes (Vindel *et al.*, 2009). Protein expression during the transition in *S. aureus* from the exponential to stationary phase is controlled by global regulators and the accessory gene regulator (*agr*) (Loughman *et al.*, 2009).

Limited data is available regarding the clones of MRSA circulating in the Pretoria region of South Africa. Hence, the aim of this study was to determine the genetic diversity of 194 MRSA isolates obtained from the Steve Biko Academic Hospital (an academic hospital situated in the Gauteng province of South Africa) from April 2010 to August 2011 using three genotyping techniques (*spa*, *agr* and MLST). The information provided by this study will help in making recommendations regarding surveillance and monitoring.

REFERENCES

- Aires de Sousa M, Conceição T, Simas C and de Lencastre H (2005) Comparison of genetic backgrounds of methicillin resistant and susceptible *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates from Portuguese hospitals and the community. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **43**: 5150-5157
- Al Nakib M, Longo M, Tazi A, Billoet A, Raymond J, Trieu-Cuot P and Poyart C (2011) Comparison of the Diversilab® system with multilocus sequence typing and pulsed-field gel electrophoresis for the characterisation of *Streptococcus agalactiae* invasive strains. *Journal of Microbiological Methods* **85**:137-142
- Al-Talib H, Yean CY, Al-Khateeb A, Hassan H, Singh KKB, Al-Jashamy K and Ravichandran M (2009) A pentaplex PCR assay for rapid detection of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and Panton-Valentine leukocidin. *BMC Microbiology* **9**: 113 (doi: 10.1186/1471-2180-9-113)
- Amaral MM, Coelho LR, Flores RP, Souza RR, Silva-Carvalho MC, Teixeira LA, Ferreira-Carvalho BT and Figueiredo AMS (2005) The predominant variant of the Brazilian epidemic clonal complex of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* has an enhanced ability to produce biofilm and to adhere to and invade airway epithelial cells. *The Journal of Infectious Diseases* **192**: 801-810
- Appelbaum PC (2007) Microbiology of antibiotic resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Clinical Infectious Diseases* **45**: S165-S170
- Argudin AM, Mendoza CM and Rodicio RM (2010) Food poisoning and *Staphylococcus aureus* enterotoxins. *Toxins* **2**: 1751-1773
- Atilano ML, Pereira PM, Yates J, Reed P, Veiga H, Pinho MG and Filipe SR (2010) Teichoic acids are temporal and spatial regulators of peptidoglycan cross-linking in *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* **107**: 18991-18996

Azeez-Akande O (2010) Global trend of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and emerging challenges for control. *African Journal of Clinical and Experimental Microbiology* **11**: 150-158

Baba T, Takeuchi F, Kuroda M, Yuzawa H, Aoki K, Oguchi A, Nagai Y, Iwama N, Asano K, Naimi T, Kuroda H, Cui L, Yamamoto K and Hiramatsu K (2002) Genome and virulence determinants of high virulence community-acquired MRSA. *The Lancet* **359**: 1819-1827

Baba T, Bae T, Schneewind O, Takeuchi F and Hiramatsu K (2008) Genome sequence of *Staphylococcus aureus* strain Newman and comparative analysis of *Staphylococcal* genomes: Polymorphism and evolution of two major pathogenicity islands. *Journal of Bacteriology* **190**: 300-310

Bae T, Banger AK, Wallace A, Glass EM, Aslund F, Schneewind O and Missiakas DM (2004) *Staphylococcus aureus* virulence genes identified by *bursa aurealis* mutagenesis and nematode killing. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* **101**: 12312-12317

Bankowski MJ and Anderson SM (2004) Real-time nucleic acid amplification in clinical microbiology. *Clinical Microbiology Newsletter* **15**: 9-15

Barber M and Rozwadowska-Dowzenko (1948) Infection by penicillin resistant staphylococci. *Lancet* **2**: 641-644

Barnes BE and Sampson DA (2011) A literature review on community-acquired methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in the United States: Clinical information for primary care nurse practitioners. *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners* **23**: 23-32

Basic-Hammer N, Vogel V, Basset P and Blanc DS (2010) Impact of recombination on genetic variability within *Staphylococcus aureus* clonal complexes. *Infection, Genetics and Evolution* **10**: 1117-1123

Bassetti M, Nicco E and Mikulska M (2009) Why is community-associated MRSA spreading across the world and how will it change clinical practice? *International Journal of Antimicrobial Agents* **34**: S15-S19

Beibei L, Yun C, Mengli C, Nan B, Xuhong Y and Rui W (2010) Linezolid versus vancomycin for the treatment of Gram-positive bacterial infections: meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. *International Journal of Antimicrobial Agents* **35**: 3-12

Bera A, Biswas R, Herbert S, Kulauzovic E, Weidenmaier C, Peschel A and Götz F (2007) Influence of wall teichoic acid on lysozyme resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Journal of Bacteriology* **189**: 280-283

Berger-Bachi B and Rohrer S (2002) Factors influencing methicillin resistance in staphylococci. *Archives of Microbiology* **178**: 165-171

Bhanderi BB, Roy A, Yadav MM and Joshi CG (2009) PCR based detection of virulence associated genes of *Staphylococcus aureus* from bovine clinical and subclinical mastitis. *The Royal Veterinary Journal of India* **5**: 20-26

Boucher H, Miller GL and Razonable RR (2010) Serious infections caused by methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Clinical Infectious Diseases* **51**: 183-197

Boucher WH and Corey RG (2008) Epidemiology of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Clinical Infectious Diseases* **46**: S344-S349

Boye K, Bartels MD, Andersen IS, Moller JA and Westh H (2007) A new multiplex-PCR for easy screening of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* SCCmec types I to V. *Clinical Microbiology and Infection* **13**: 725-727

Boyle-Vavra S and Daum RS (2007) Community-acquired methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: the role of Pantone-Valentine leukocidine. *Laboratory Investigation* **87**: 3-9

Bravo LTC and Procop GW (2009) Recent advances in diagnostic microbiology. *Seminars in Hematology* **46**: 248-258

Brown DFJ, Edwards DI, Hawkey PM, Morrison D, Ridgway GL, Towner KJ and Wren MWD on behalf of the joint working party of the British Society for Antimicrobial Chemotherapy, Hospital Infection Society and Infection Control Nurses Association (2005) Guidelines for the laboratory diagnosis and susceptibility testing of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA). *Journal of Antimicrobial Chemotherapy* **56**: 1000-1018

Bukowski M, Wladyka B and Dubin G (2011) Exfoliative toxins of *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Toxins* **2**: 1148-1165

Cabell CH, Jollis JG, Peterson GE, Corey GR, Anderson DJ, Sexton DJ, Woods CW, Reller B, Ryan T and Fowler VG (2002) Changing patient characteristics and the effect on mortality in endocarditis. *Archives of Internal Medicine* **162**: 90-94

Campanile F, Bongiorno D, Borbone S and Stefani S (2010) Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* evolution-The multiple facets of an old pathogen. *European Infectious Diseases* **4**: 70-76

Cerrone F, Poyatos JM, Molina-Muñoz M, Cortés-Lorenzo C, González-López and Rodelas B (2012) Prevalence of *Nitrosomonas* cluster 7 populations in the ammonia-oxidising community of a submerged membrane bioreactor treating urban wastewater under different operation conditions. *Bioprocess and Biosystems Engineering* **14**: (doi: 10.1007/s00449-012-0823-0)

Chambers HF (2001) The changing epidemiology of *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Emerging Infectious Diseases* **7**: 178-182

Chavez TT and Decker CF (2008) Healthcare-associated MRSA versus community-associated MRSA. *Disease-a-Month* **54**: 763-768

Chen L, Mediavilla JR, Oliveira DC, Willey BM, De Lencastre H and Kreiswirth BN (2009) Multiplex real-time PCR for rapid staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* typing. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **42**: 3692-3706

Chongtrakool P, Ito T, Ma XX, Kondo Y, Trakulsomboon S, Tiensasitorn C, Jamklang M, Chavalit T, Song JH and Hiramatsu K (2006) Staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* (SCC*mec*) typing of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains isolated in 11 Asian countries: A proposal for a new nomenclature for SCC*mec* elements. *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* **50**: 1001-1012

Clinical and Laboratory Standard Institute (CLSI) (2013) M100-S23 Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing: 23rd informational informational supplement. Clinical and Laboratory Standard Institute, Wayne, Pennsylvania USA

Conceição T, Tavares A, Miragaia M, Hyde K, Aires-de-Sousa M and De Lencastre H (2010) Prevalence and clonality of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) in the Atlantic Azores islands: Predominance of SCC*mec* types IV, V and VI. *European Journal of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases* **29**:543-550

Conterno LO, Shymanski J and Ramotar K (2007) Real-time polymerase chain reaction detection of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: impact on nosocomial transmission and cost. *Infection Control and Hospital Epidemiology* **28**: 1134-1141

Coombs GW, Monecke S, Ehricht R, Slickers P, Pearson JC, Tan HL, Christiansen KJ and O'Brien FG (2010) Differentiation of clonal complex 59 community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in Western Australia. *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* **54**: 1914-1921

Cosgrove SE and Fowler VG Jr (2008) Management of methicillin resistant bacteraemia. *Clinical Infectious Diseases* **46**: S386-S393

Cuevas O, Hoskins JD and Guinea E (2003) Evaluation of the MRSA-screen latex agglutination test (PBP2a) for detection of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and performance against borderline oxacillin resistant isolates. Abstract: 43rd Interscience

Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy. Chicago, IL, USA, September 14 to 17, 2003. Abstract no. D-256

Daum RS and Spellberg B (2012) Progress toward a *Staphylococcus aureus* vaccine. *Clinical Infectious Diseases* **54**:560-567

David MZ and Daum RS (2010) Community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: epidemiology and clinical consequences of an emerging epidemic. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews* **23**: 616-687

Del Rio AD, Cervera C, Moreno A, Phillippe M and Miro JM (2009) Community-associated versus healthcare-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* bacteraemia: A 10-year retrospective review. *European Journal of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases* **28**: 353-361

DeLeo FR and Chambers HF (2009) Reemergence of antibiotic-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in the genomic era. *Journal of Clinical Investigation* **119**: 2464-2474

DeLeo FR, Otto M, Kreiswith BN and Chambers HF (2010) Community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *The Lancet* **375**:1557-1568

Deurenberg HR and Stobberingh EE (2008) The evolution of *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Infection, Genetics and Evolution* **8**: 747-763

Deurenberg RH, Rijnders MIA, Sebastian S, Welling MA, Beisser PS and Stobberingh EE (2009) The *Staphylococcus aureus* lineage-specific markers collagen adhesin and toxic shock syndrome toxin 1 distinguish multilocus sequence typing clonal complexes within *spa* clonal complexes. *Diagnostic Microbiology and Infectious Diseases* **65**: 116-122

Diep BA, Carleton HA, Chang RF, Sensabaug GF and Perdreau-Remington F (2006) Roles of 34 virulence genes in the evolution of hospital- and community-associated strains of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *The Journal of Infectious Diseases* **193**: 1495-1503

Dinges MM, Orwin PM and Schlievert PM (2000) Exotoxins of *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews* **13**: 16-34

Dossett JH, Kronvall G, Williams RCJ and Quie PG (1969) Antiphagocytic effects of staphylococcal protein A. *The Journal of Immunology* **103**: 1405-1410

European Antimicrobial Resistance Surveillance System management team, members of the advisory board and national representative of EARSS, EARSS annual report (2007) Bilthoven, the Netherlands; Available online: http://www.rivm.nl/earss/images/EARSS%202007_Final_tcm61-55933.pdf (Accessed 28 August, 2012)

Euzéby JP (2011) List of prokaryotic names with standing in nomenclature. Formerly list of bacterial names with standing in nomenclature (LBSN). Available online: <http://www.bacterio.cict.fr/> (Accessed: April 2013)

Faria NA, Carrico JA, Oliveira DC, Mario R and De Lencastre H (2008) Analysis of typing methods for epidemiological surveillance of both methicillin resistant and methicillin susceptible *Staphylococcus aureus* strains. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **46**: 136-144

Fowler VG Jr, Sanders LL, Kong LK, McClelland RS, Gottlieb GS, Li J, Ryan T, Sexton DJ, Roussakis G, Harrell LJ and Corey GR (1999) Infective endocarditis due to *Staphylococcus aureus*: 59 prospectively identified cases with follow up. *Clinical Infectious Diseases* **28**: 106-114

Foster TJ (2004) The *Staphylococcus aureus* “Superbug”. *The Journal of Clinical Investigation* **114**: 1693-1696

Frenay HME, Theelen PG, Schouls M, Vandenbroucke-Grauls MJE, Verhoef J, Van Leeuwen WJ and Mooi FR (1994) Discrimination of epidemic and nonepidemic methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains on the basis of protein A gene polymorphism. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **32**: 846-847

Frey PD, Said-Salim B, Rupp ME, Hinrichs SH, Boxrud DJ, Davis CC, Kreiswirth BN and Schlievert PM (2003) Comparative molecular analysis of community- or hospital-acquired

methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* **47**: 196-203

Gaze W, O'Neill C and Wellington E (2008) Antibiotic resistance in the environment, with particular reference to MRSA. *Advances in Applied Microbiology* **63**: 249-270

Gillespie MT, Lyon BR and Skurray RA (1988) Structural and evolutionary relationships of β -lactamase transposons from *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Journal of General Microbiology* **134**: 2857-2866

Goering RV, Shawar RM, Scangarella NE, O'Hara FP, Amrine-Madsen H, West JM, Dalessandro M, Becker JA, Wash SL, Miller LA, van Horn SF, Thomas ES and Twynholm ME (2008) Molecular epidemiology of methicillin resistant and methicillin susceptible *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates from global clinical trials. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **46**: 2842-2847

Golding GR, Bryden L, Levett PN, McDonald RR, Wong A, Wylie J, Graham MR, Tyler S, Domselaar GV, Simor AE, Gravel D and Mulvey MR (2010) Livestock-associated MRSA sequence type 398 in humans, Canada. *Emerging Infectious Diseases* **16**: 587-594

Gordon RJ and Lowy FD (2008) Pathogenesis of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* infection. *Clinical Infectious Diseases* **46**: S350-S359

Gordon CP, Williams P and Chan WC (2013) Attenuating *Staphylococcus aureus* virulence gene regulation: a medicinal chemistry perspective. *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry* **56**: 1389-1404

Gould MI, David ZM, Esposito S, Garau J, Lina G, Mazzei T and Peters G (2012) New insights into methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) pathogenesis, treatment and resistance. *International Journal of Antimicrobial Agents* **39**: 96-104

Green BN, Johnson CD, Egan JT, Rosenthal M, Griffith EA and Evans MW (2012) Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: An overview for manual therapists. *Journal of Chiropractic Medicine* **11**: 64-76

Hall BG, Johnson CD, Egan JT, Rosenthal M, Griffith EA and Evans MW (2012) Pan-genome analysis provides much higher strain typing resolution than multilocus sequence typing. *Microbiology* **156**: 1060-1068

Hallin M, Deplano A, Denis O, De Mendonça R, De Ryck R and Struelens MJ (2007) Validation of pulsed-field gel electrophoresis and *spa* typing for long-term, Nationwide epidemiological surveillance studies of *Staphylococcus aureus* infections. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **45**: 127-133

Hallin M, Deplano A and Struelens MJ (2012) Molecular typing of bacterial pathogens: A tool for the epidemiological study and control of infectious diseases. In: *New Frontiers of Molecular Epidemiology of Infectious Diseases*. 1st (ed). Morand S, Beaudreau F and Cabaret J (eds). Springer, Netherlands. pp 9-25

Hanssen AM and Ericson Sollid JU (2006) SCC mec in staphylococci: Genes on the move. *FEMS Immunology and Medical Microbiology* **46**:8-20

Harmsen D, Claus H, Witte W, Rothgänger J, Claus H, Turnwald D and Vogel U (2003) Typing of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in a university hospital by using novel software for *spa* repeat determination and database management. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **41**: 5442-5448

Harris SR, Feil EJ, Holden MTG, Quail MA, Nickerson EK, Chantratita N, Gardete S, Tavares A, Day N, Lindsay JA, Edgeworth JD, De Lencastre H, Julian P, Peacock SJ and Bentley SD (2010) Evolution of MRSA during hospital transmission and intercontinental spread. *Science* **327**: 469-474

Hauang H, Flynn NM, King JH, Monchaund C, Morita M and Cohen SH (2006) Comparisons of community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) and hospital-associated MRSA infections in Sacramento, California. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **44**: 2423-2427

Hellmark B, Berglund C, Nilsson-Augustinsson A, Unemo M and Söderquist B (2013) Staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* (SCC*mec*) and arginine catabolic mobile element (ACME) in *Staphylococcus epidermidis* isolated from prosthetic joint infections. *European Journal of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases* **32**: 691-697

Heysell SK, Sheno SV, Catterick K, Thomas TA and Friedland G (2011) Prevalence of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* nasal carriage among hospitalised patients with tuberculosis in rural KwaZulu-Natal. *South African Medical Journal* **101**: 332-334

Hiramatsu K, Cui L, Kuroda M and Ito T (2001) The emergence and evolution of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Trends in Microbiology* **9**: 486-493

Humphreys H, Grundman H, Skov R, Lucet JC and Cauda R (2009) Prevention and control of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Clinical Microbiology and Infection* **15**: 120-124

Iraz M, Tekerekoglu MS, Otlu B and Ay Selma (2012) Comparison of an automated system with four phenotypic methods for the detection of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *African Journal of Microbiology Research* **6**: 764-769

Ito T, Katayama Y, Asada K, Mori N, Tsutsumimoto K, Tiensasitorn C and Hiramatsu K (2001) Structural comparison of three types of staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* integrated in the chromosome in methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* **45**: 1323-1336

Jansen van Rensburg MJ, Madikane VE, Whitelaw A, Chachage M, Haffejee S and Elisha BG (2011) The dominant methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* clone from hospitals in Cape Town has an unusual genotype: ST612. *Clinical Microbiology and Infection* **17**: 785-792

Jarvis RW (2009) Prevention and control of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: Dealing with reality, resistance and resistance to reality. *Clinical Infectious Diseases* **50**: 218-220

Jeyasekaran G, Raj KT, Shakila RJ, Thangarani AJ, Karthika S and Luzi (2010) Simultaneous detection of *Staphylococcus aureus* enterotoxin C producing strains from clinical and environmental samples by multiplex-PCR assays. *Annals of Microbiology* **61**: 585-590

Johnson PA (2011) Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: The European landscape. *Journal of Antimicrobial Chemotherapy* **66**: iv43-iv48

Joshi GS, Spontak JS, Klapper DG and Richardson AR (2011) Arginine catabolic mobile element encoded *speG* abrogates the unique hypersensitivity of *Staphylococcus aureus* to exogenous polyamines. *Molecular Microbiology* **82**: 9-20

Junkins AD, Lockhart SR, Heilmann KP, Dohrn CL, Von Stein DL, Winokur PL, Doern GV and Richter SS (2009) BD Phoenix and Vitek2 detection of *mec A*-mediated resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus* with cefoxitin. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **47**: 2879-2882

Karami S, Rahbar M and Yousefi JV (2011) Evaluation of five phenotypic methods for detection of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Iranian Journal of Pathology* **6**: 27-31

Katayama Y, Ito T and Hiramatsu K (2000) A new class of genetic element, staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec*, encodes methicillin resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Antimicrobial Agents Chemotherapy* **44**: 1549-1555

Kateete DP, Kimani CN, Katabazi FA, Okeng A, Okee MS, Nanteza A, Joloba ML and Najjuka FC (2010) Identification of *Staphylococcus aureus*: DNase and mannitol salt agar improve the efficiency of the tube coagulase test. *Annals of Clinical Microbiology and Antimicrobials* **9**: 23 (doi: 10.1186/1476-0711-9-23)

Kaya EG, Karakoc E, Yagci S and Mihriban Y (2009) Evaluation of phenotypic and genotypic methods for detection of methicillin resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus*. *African Journal of Microbiology Research* **3**: 925-929

Kennedy AD and DeLeo FR (2009) Epidemiology and virulence of community-associated MRSA. *Clinical Microbiology Newsletter* **31**: 153-158

Kernodle DS (2000) Mechanisms of resistance to β -lactam antibiotics. *In*: Fischetti VA, Novick RP and Ferretti, JJ (ed) Gram-positive pathogens. *American Society of Microbiology*, Washington, DC, USA pp 609-620

Kesah C, Redjeb SB, Odugbemi TO, Boye CS, Dosso M, Achola JON, Koulla-Shiro S, Benbachir M, Rahal K and Borg M (2003) Prevalence of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in eight African hospitals and Malta. *Clinical Microbiology and Infection* **9**: 153-156

Khanna T, Friendship R, Dewey C and Weese JS (2008) Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* colonisation in pigs and pig farmers. *Veterinary Microbiology* **128**: 298-303

Kim J (2009) Understanding the evolution of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Clinical Microbiology Newsletter* **31**: 17-22

Klevens RM, Morrison MA, Nadle J, Petit S, Gershman K, Ray S, Harrison LH, Lynfield R, Dumyati G, Townes MJ, Craig AS, Zell ER, Fosheim GE, McDougal LK, Carey RB and Fridkin SK (2007) Invasive methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: Infections in the United States. *Journal of the American Medical Association* **298**: 1763-1771

Köck R, Becker K, Cookson B, van Gemert-Pijen JE, Harbarth S, Kluytmans J, Mielke M, Peters G, Skov RL, Struelens MJ, Tacconelli E, Torné AN, Witte W and Friedrich AW (2010) Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA): burden of disease and control challenges in Europe. *Euro Surveillance* **15**: 19688 (<http://www.eurosurveillance.org/ViewArticle.aspx?ArticleId=19688>)

Köck R, Mellmann A, Schaumburg F, Friedrich AW, Kipp F and Becker K (2011) The epidemiology of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) in Germany. *Medicine* **108**: 761-767

Kondo Y, Ito T, Ma XX, Watanabe S, Kreiswirth BN, Etienne J and Hiramatsu K (2007) Combination of multiplex-PCRs for staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* type assignment: Rapid identification system for *mec*, *ccr* and major differences in junkyard. *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* **51**: 264-274

Kramer A, Wagenvoort H, Åhrén C, Daniels-Haardt I, Hartemann P, Kobayashi H, Kurcz A, Picazo J, Privitera G and Assadian O (2010) Epidemiology of MRSA and current strategies in Europe and Japan. *GMS Krankenhaushygiene Interdisziplinär* **5**: (doi:10.3205/dgkh0001444)

Kuroda M, Ohta T, Uchiyama I, Baba T, Yuzawa H, Kobayashi I, Cui L, Oguchi A, Aoki K, Nagai Y, Lian J, Ito T, Kanamori M, Matsumaru H, Maruyama A, Murakami H, Hosoyama A, Mizutani-Ui Y, Takahashi NK, Sawano T, Inoue R, Kaito C, Sekimizu K, Hirakawa H, Kuhara S, Goto S, Yabuzaki J, Kanehisa M, Yamashita A, Oshima K, Furuya K, Yoshino C, Shiba T, Hattori M, Ogasawara N, Hayashi H and Hiramatsu K (2001) Whole genome sequencing of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *The Lancet* **357**: 169-178

Labandeira-Rey M, Couzon F, Boisset S, Brown IE, Bes M, Benito Y, Barbu ME, Vazquez V, Hook M, Etienne J, Vandenesse F, and Bowden MG (2007) *Staphylococcus aureus* Pantón–Valentine leukocidin causes necrotizing pneumonia. *Science* **315**: 130-133

Lamers PR, Muthukrishnan G, Castoe AT, Tafur S, Cole MA and Parkinson LC (2012) Phylogenetic relationships among *Staphylococcus* species and refinement of cluster groups based on multilocus data. *BMC Evolutionary Biology* **12**: 171-186

Lappin E and Ferguson JA (2009) Gram-positive toxic shock syndromes. *Lancet Infectious Diseases* **9**: 281-290

Larkin EA, Carman RJ, Krakauer T and Stiles BG (2009) *Staphylococcus aureus*: The toxic presence of a pathogen extraordinaire. *Current Medicinal Chemistry* **16**: 4003-4019

Laurent F, Chardon H, Haenni M, Bes M, Reverdy ME, Madec JY, Lagier E, Vandenesch F and Tristan A (2012) MRSA harbouring *mecA* variant gene *mecC*, France. *Emerging Infectious Diseases* **18**: 1465-1467

Le Loir Y, Baron F and Gautier M (2003) *Staphylococcus aureus* and food poisoning. *Genetics and Molecular Research* **2**: 63-76

Lee JH, Jeong JM and Park YH (2004) Evaluation of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* screen latex agglutination test for detection of MRSA of animal origin. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **42**: 2780-2782

Lesse AJ and Mylotte JM (2006) Clinical and molecular epidemiology of nursing home-associated *Staphylococcus aureus* bacteraemia. *American Journal of Infection Control* **34**: 642-650

Lindsay AJ, Friedrich WA, Kearns MA, Westh H and MacKenzie MF (2012) Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA): global epidemiology and harmonisation of typing methods. *International Journal of Antimicrobial Agents* **39**: 273-282

Lina G, Vandenesch F and Etienne J (2005) A brief history of *Staphylococcus aureus* Panton-Valentine leucocidin. Available online: <http://www.antimicrobee.org/ho4c.files/history/PVL-long.pdf> (Accessed: October 2011)

Liu YG (2009) Molecular pathogenesis of *Staphylococcus aureus* infection. *Paediatric Research* **65**: 71-77

Liu JW, Ko WC, Huang CH, Liao CH, Lu CT, Chuang YC, Tsao SM, Chen YS, Liu YC, Chen WY, Jang TN, Lin HC, Chen CM, Shi ZY, Pan SC, Yang JL, Kung HC, Liu CE, Cheng YJ, Chen YH, Lu PL, Sun W, Wang LS, Yu KW, Chiang PC, Lee MH, Hsu GJ and Hsueh PR (2012) Agreement assessment of tigecycline susceptibilities determined by disk diffusion and broth microdilution methods among commonly encountered resistant bacterial isolates: Results from the tigecycline *in vitro* surveillance in Taiwan (TIST) study, 2008 to 2010. *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* **56**: 1414-1417

Llarrull LI, Fisher JF and Mobashery S (2009) Molecular basis and phenotype of methicillin resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus* and insights into new β -lactams that meet the challenge. *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* **53**: 4051 (00084-09)

Löffler B, Hussain M, Grundmeier M, Brück M, Holzinger D, Varga G, Roth J, Kahl BC, Proctor RA and Peters G (2010) *Staphylococcus aureus* Panton-Valentine leukocidin is a very potent cytotoxic factor for human neutrophils. *PLoS Pathogens* **6**:e1000715 (doi: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000715)

Loughman JA, Fritz SA, Storch GA, Hunstad DA (2009) Virulence gene expression in human community-acquired *Staphylococcus aureus* infection. *The Journal of Infectious Diseases* **199**: 294-301

Lowy FD (1998) *Staphylococcus aureus* infections. *The New England Journal of Medicine* **339**: 520-532

Lowy FD (2003) Antimicrobial resistance: The example of *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Journal of Clinical Investigation* **111**: 1265-1273

Lupoli TJ, Tsukamoto H, Dould EH, Wang TSA, Walker S and Khane D (2011) Transpeptidase-mediated incorporation of D-amino acids into bacterial peptidoglycan. *Journal of The American Chemical Society* **133**: 10748-10751

Majeed Z, Arafat Y, Ajab Z, Malik SA, Abbasi WS and Ajab H (2012) Genotypic characterisation of prevalent methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in Pakistani community hospitals. *Acta Bioquímica Clínica Latinoamericana* **46**:271-283

Makgotlho PE, Kock MM, Hoosen A, Lekalakala R, Omar S, Dove M and Ehlers MM (2009) Molecular identification and genotyping of MRSA isolates. *FEMS Immunology and Medical Microbiology* **57**:104-115

Malachowa N and DeLeo RF (2010) Mobile genetic elements of *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences* **67**: 3057-3071

Malhotra-Kumar S, Abrahantes JC, Sabiti W, Lammens C, Vercauteren G, Leven M, Molenberghs, Aerts M and Goossens H (2010) Evaluation of chromogenic media for detection of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **48**: 1040 (10.1128/JCM.01745-09)

Marais E, Aithma N, Perovic O, Oosthuysen WF, Musenge E and Duse AG (2009) Antimicrobial susceptibility of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* from South Africa. *South African Medical Journal* **99**: 170-173

Marlowe EM and Bankowski MJ (2011) Conventional and molecular methods for the detection of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **49**: S53-S56

Mathew AA, Thomas M, Appalaraju B and Jayalakshmi J (2010) Evaluation and comparison of tests to detect methicillin resistant *S. aureus*. *Indian Journal of Pathology and Microbiology* **53**:79-82

Matouskova I and Janout V (2008) Current knowledge of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and community-associated *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Biomedical Papers of the Medical Faculty University of Palacky, Olomuc Czechoslovakia* **152**: 191-202

McCarthy AJ and Lindsay JA (2012) The distribution of plasmids that carry virulence and resistance genes in *Staphylococcus aureus* is lineage associated. *BMC Microbiology* **12**: 104 (doi 1471-2180/12/104)

McCarthy AJ, Lindsay JA and Loeffler A (2012) Are all methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) equal in all hosts? Epidemiological and genetic comparison between animal and human MRSA. *Veterinary Dermatology* **23**: 254-267

McClure JA, Conly JM, Elsayed S and Zang K (2010) Multiplex-PCR assay to facilitate identification of the recently described staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* type VII. *Molecular and Cellular Probes* **4**: 229-232

McMurray LW, Kernodle DS and Barg NL (1990) Characterisation of a widespread strain of methicillin susceptible *Staphylococcus aureus* associated with nosocomial infections. *Journal of Infectious Diseases* **162**: 759-762

Medhus A, Slettemeas JS, Marstein L, Larssen KW and Sunde M (2013) Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus mecC* gene variant isolated from a cat suffering from chronic conjunctivitis. *Journal of Antimicrobial Chemotherapy* **68**: 968-975

Mediavilla JR, Chen L, Mathema B and Kreiswirth BN (2012) Global epidemiology of community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Current Opinion in Microbiology* **15**: 588-595

Medina G, Oth C, Oth L, Fernández H, Muñoz C, Cruz M, Zaror Â, Henriquez R, Arce M and Wilson M (2012) Subtyping of Chilean methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains carrying the staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* type I. *Brazilian Journal of Microbiology* **43**: 888-894

Mehndiratta P and Bhalla P (2012) Typing of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: A technical review. *Indian Journal of Medical Microbiology* **30**: 16-23

Milheiro C, Oliveira DC and De Lencastre H (2007a) Update to multiplex-PCR strategy for assignment of *mec* element types in *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* **51**: 374-377

Milheiro C, Oliveira DC and De Lencastre H (2007b) Multiplexing PCR strategy for subtyping the *Staphylococcal* cassette chromosome *mec* type IV in methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: 'SCC*mec* IV multiplex'. *Journal of Antimicrobial Chemotherapy* **60**: 42-48

Mishra NN, Liu GY, Yeaman MR, Nast CC, Proctor RA, Mckinell J and Bayer AS (2011) Carotenoid-related alteration of cell membrane fluidity impacts *Staphylococcus aureus* susceptibility to host defence peptides. *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* **55**: 526-531

Moet GJ, Jones RN, Biedenbach DJ, Stilwell MG and Fritsche TR (2007) Contemporary causes of skin and soft tissue infections in North America, Latin America and Europe: Report

from SENTRY Antimicrobial Surveillance programme (1998-2004). *Diagnostic Microbiology and Infectious Diseases* **57**: 7-13

Moellering RC Jr (1995) Past, present and future of antimicrobial agents. *American Journal of Medicine* **99**: S8-S11

Moellering RC Jr (2012) MRSA: The first half century. *Journal of Antimicrobial Chemotherapy* **67**: 4-11

Moodley A, Oosthuysen WF, Duse AG and Marais E (2010) Molecular characterisation of clinical methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in South Africa. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **48**: 608-611

Mulvey MR and Simor AE (2009) Antimicrobial resistance in hospitals: How concerned should we be? *Canadian Medical Association* **180**: 408-415

Muto CA, Jernigan JA, Ostrowsky BE, Richet HM, Jarvis WR, Boyce JM and Farr BM (2003) SHEA guideline for preventing nosocomial transmission of multidrug resistant strains of *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Enterococcus*. *Infection Control and Hospital Epidemiology* **24**: 362-386

Naber CK (2009) *Staphylococcus aureus* bacteraemia: Epidemiology, pathophysiology and management strategies. *Clinical Infectious Diseases* **48**: 231-237

Nadji G, Remadi JP, Coviaux F, Mirode AA, Brahim A, Enriquez-Sarano M and Tribouilloy C (2005) Comparison of clinical and morphological characteristics of *Staphylococcus aureus* endocarditis with endocarditis caused by other pathogens. *Heart* **91**: 932-937

Nannini E, Murray BE and Arias CA (2010) Resistance or decreased susceptibility to glycopeptides, daptomycin and linezolid in methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Current Opinion in Pharmacology* **10**: 1-6

Narukawa M, Yasuoka A, Note R and Funada H (2009) Sequence-based *spa* typing as a rapid screening method for the areal and nosocomial outbreaks MRSA. *The Tohoku Journal of Experimental Medicine* **218**: 207-213

Nastaly P, Grinhole M and Bielawski KP (2010) Molecular characteristics of community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains for clinical medicine. *Archives of Microbiology* **192**: 603-617

Nishifuji K, Sugai M and Amagai M (2008) Staphylococcal exfoliative toxins: “Molecular scissors” of bacteria that attack the cutaneous defence barrier in mammals. *Journal of Dermatological Science* **49**:21-31

Novick RP (2003) Autoinduction and signal transduction in the regulation of staphylococcal virulence. *Molecular Microbiology* **48**: 1429-1449

Oehler RL (2013) MRSA: Historical perspective. Available online: www.antimicrobe.org (Accessed: April, 2013)

Ojulong J, Mwambu TP, Jolobo M, Agwu E, Bwanga F, Najjuka C and Kaddu-Mulindwa DH (2009) Prevalence of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) among isolates from surgical site infections in Mulago hospital Kampala, Uganda. *The Internet Journal of Infectious Diseases* **7**: 1528-8366

Oliveira DC and De Lencastre H (2002) Multiplexing-PCR strategy for rapid identification of structural types and variants of the *mec* element in methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* **46**: 2155-2161

Ortega E, Abriouel H, Lucas R and Galvez A (2010) Multiple roles of *Staphylococcus aureus* enterotoxins: Pathogenicity, superantigenic activity and correlation to antibiotic resistance. *Toxins* **2**: 2117-2131

Otsuka T, Zaraket H, Takano T, Saito K, Dohmae S, Higuchi W and Yamamoto T (2007) Macrolide-lincosamide-streptogramin B resistance phenotypes and genotypes among

Staphylococcus aureus clinical isolates in Japan. *Clinical Microbiology and Infection* **13**: 325-327

Otto M (2010) *Staphylococcus* colonisation of the skin and antimicrobial peptides. *Expert Review of Dermatology* **5**: 183-195

Otto M (2012) MRSA virulence and spread. *Cellular Microbiology* **14**: 1513-1521

Pantosti A and Venditti M (2009) "MRSA and the pulmonologist". *European Respiratory Journal* **34**: 190-196

Piette A and Verschragreen G (2009) Role of coagulase-negative staphylococci in human diseases. *Veterinary Microbiology* **134**: 45-54

Pillai MM, Latha R and Sarkar G (2012) Detection of methicillin resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus* by polymerase chain reaction and conventional methods: A comparative study. *Journal of Laboratory Physicians* **4**: 83-88

Plata K, Rosato AE and Wegrzyn G (2009) *Staphylococcus aureus* as an infectious agent: Overview of biochemistry and molecular genetics of its pathogenicity. *Acta Biochimica Polonica* **56**: 597-612

Price LB, Stegger M, Hasman H, Aziz M, Larsen J, Andersen PS, Pearson T, Waters AE, Foster JT, Schupp J, Gillece J, Driebe E, Liu CM, Springer B, Zdovc I, Battisti A, Franco A, Zmudzki J, Schwarz S, Butaye P, Jouy E, Pomba C, Porrero MC, Rulmy R, Smith TC, Robinson DA, Weese JS, Arriola CS, Yu F, Laurent F, Keim P, Skov R and Aarestrup FM (2012) *Staphylococcus aureus* CC398: host adaptation and emergence of methicillin resistance in livestock. *mBiosphere* **3**: e00305-11 (doi: 10.1128/mBio.00305-11)

Ramdani-Bougoussa N, Bensafar N and Denine R (2001) Susceptibilities of *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Staphylococcus* coagulase negative and *Enterococcus* sp. isolated from an Algerian hospital, abstr P547. 11th European Congress of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases.

Rasmussen VR, Fowler GV Jr, Skov R and Bruun EN (2011) Future challenges and treatment of *Staphylococcus aureus* bacteraemia with emphasis on MRSA. *Future Microbiology* **6**: 43-56

Rasschaert G, Vanderhaeghen W, Dewaele I, Janez W, Huijsdens X, Butaye P and Heyndrickx M (2009) Comparison of fingerprinting methods for typing of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* sequence type 398. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **47**: 3313-3322

Riley TV and Rouse IL (2005) Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in Western Australia, 1983-1992. *Journal of Hospital Infection* **29**: 177-188

Robinson JO, Pearson JC, Christiansen KJ, Coombs GW and Murray RJ (2008) Community-associated versus healthcare-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* bacteraemia: a 10-year retrospective review. *European Journal of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases* **28**: 353-361

Ruocco E, Baroni A, Sangiuliano S, Donnarumma G and Ruocco V (2011) Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome. In: *Emergency Dermatology* 1st ed. Wolf R, Davidovici BB, Parish JL and Parish LC (eds). Cambridge University Press pp 109-112

Ruppitsch W, Indra A, Stöger A, Mayer B, Stadlbauer S, Wewalka G and Allerberger F (2006) Classifying *spa* types in complexes improves interpretation of typing results for methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **44**: 2442-2448

Ryan JK and Ray GC (2004) *Sherris Medical Microbiology* 4th ed., McGraw-Hill Medical, United States of America pp 261-273

Sakoulas G (2006) The accessory gene regulator (*agr*) in methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: Role in virulence and reduced susceptibility to glycopeptides antibiotics. *Drug Discovery Today* **3**: 287-294

Sakoulas G and Moellering (2008) Increasing antibiotic resistance among methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains. *Clinical Infectious Diseases* **46**: S360-S367

Salaam-Dreyer Z (2010) Genotyping characterisation of *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates causing bacteraemia in patients admitted to Tygerberg Hospital, Western Cape Province, South Africa. *UNScholar Research Repository* MSc Thesis, Stellenbosch University. Available online: <http://hdl.handle.net/10019.1/4095>. (Accessed: January 2013)

Sangappa M and Thiagarajan P (2012) Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: Resistance genes and their regulation. *International Journal of Pharmacy and Pharmaceutical Sciences* **4**:658-667

Schlievert PM, Strandberg KL, Lin YC, Peterson ML and Leung DYM (2010) Secreted virulence factors comparison between methicillin resistance and methicillin sensitive *Staphylococcus aureus* and its relevance to atopic dermatitis. *Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology* **125**: 39-49

Schmitz FJ, Steiert M, Tichy HV, Hofmann B, Verhoef J, Heinz HP, Köhrer K and Jones ME (1998) Typing of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates from Düsseldorf by six genotypic methods. *Journal of Medical Microbiology* **47**:341-351

Shittu AO and Lin J (2006) Antimicrobial susceptibility patterns and characterisation of clinical isolates of *Staphylococcus aureus* in KwaZulu-Natal province, South Africa. *BMC Infectious Diseases* **6**: 125 (doi.10.1186/1471-2334-6-125)

Shittu AO, Udo EE and Lin J (2009a) Phenotypic and molecular characterisation of *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates expressing low and high level mupirocin resistance in Nigeria and South Africa. *BMC Infectious Diseases* **9**: 10 (doi: 1186/1471-2334-9-10)

Shittu AO, Nübel U, Udo E, Lin J and Gaogakwe S (2009b) Characterisation of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates from hospitals in KwaZulu-Natal province, republic of South Africa. *Journal of Medical Microbiology* **58**: 1219-1226

Shittu AO, Okon K, Adesida S, Oyedara O, Witte W, Strommenger B, Layer F and Nübel U (2011) Antibiotic resistance and molecular epidemiology of *Staphylococcus aureus* in Nigeria. *BMC Microbiology* **11**: 92 (doi:10.1186/1471-2180-11-92)

Shorr AF, Tabak YP, Killian AD, Gupta V, Liu LZ, Kollef MH (2006) Healthcare-associated bloodstream infection: a destiny entity? Insights from a large US database. *Critical Care Medicine* **34**: 2588-2595

Silversides AJ, Lappin E and Ferguson JA (2010) Staphylococcal toxic shock syndrome: mechanisms and management. *Current Infectious Disease Reports* **12**: 392-400

Singh A, Goering RV, Simjee S, Foley S and Zervos MJ (2006) Application of molecular techniques to the study of hospital infection. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews* **19**: 512-530

Skrupky LP, Micek ST and Kollef MH (2009) Bench-to-beside review: Understanding the impact of resistance and virulence factors on methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* infections in the intensive care unit. *Critical Care* **13**: 222 (doi:10.1186/cc8028)

Song JH, Hiramatsu K, Suh JY, Ko KS, Ito T, Kapi M, Kem S, Kim YS, Oh WS, Peck KR and Lee NY (2004) Emergence in Asian countries of *Staphylococcus aureus* with reduced susceptibility to vancomycin. *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* **48**: 4926-4928

Stefani S and Goglio A (2010) Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: Related infections and antibiotic resistance. *International Journal of Infectious Diseases* **14**:19-22

Stefani S, Chung DR, Lindsay JA, Friedrich AW, Kearns AM, Westh H and MacKenzie FM (2012) Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA): Global epidemiology and harmonisation of typing methods. *International Journal of Antimicrobial Agents* **39**:273-282

Steven RG (2009) Genomics of the Staphylococci. In: *Staphylococci in human disease*. 2nd (ed). Crossley KB, Jefferson KK, Archer GL and Fowler VG Jr (eds). Wiley-Blackwell, West Sussex, United Kingdom. pp 19 (doi: 10.1002/978144308464.fmatter)

Strandén A, Frei R and Widmer AF (2003) Molecular typing of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: Can PCR replace pulsed-field gel electrophoresis? *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **41**:3181-3186

Struelens MJ, Hawkey PM, French GL, Witte W and Tacconelli E (2009) Laboratory tools and strategies for methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* screening, surveillance and typing: state of the art and unmet needs. *Clinical Microbiology and Infection* **15**: 112-119

Stryjewski ME and Corey GR (2009) New treatments for methicillin *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Current Opinion in Critical Care* **15**: 403-412

Stürenburg E (2009) Rapid detection of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* directly from clinical samples: Methods, effectiveness and cost considerations. *German Medical Science* **7**: 1-18

Suhaili Z, Johari SA, Mohtar M, Abdullah ART, Ahmad A and Ali AM (2009) Detection of Malaysian methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) clinical isolates using simplex and duplex real-time PCR. *World Journal of Microbiology and Biotechnology* **25**: 253-258

Suzuki H, Lefebure T, Bitar PP and Stanhope JM (2012) Comparative genomic analysis of the genus *Staphylococcus*, including *Staphylococcus aureus* and its newly described sister species *Staphylococcus simiae*. *BMC Genomics* **13**: 38-46

Taiwo SS (2009) Methicillin resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus*: A review of the molecular epidemiology, clinical significance and laboratory detection methods. *West African Journal of Medicine* **13**: 38-46

Tenover CF (2006) Mechanisms of antimicrobial resistance in bacteria. *The American Journal of Medicine* **119**: S3-S9

Thoendel MJ (2012) Synthesis of the accessory gene regulator autoinducing peptide in *Staphylococcus aureus*. Dissertation, University of Iowa, 2012. Available online: <http://ir.uiowa.edu/etd/2999> (Accessed June 2013)

Tiwari KB (2009) Vancomycin resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus* may occur faster than expected. *International Journal of Life Sciences* **3**:6-13

Trindade PA, McCulloch JA, Oliveira GA and Mamizuka EM (2003) Molecular techniques for MRSA typing: current issues and perspectives. *The Brazilian Journal of Infectious Diseases* **7**: 32-43

Trülzsch K, Grabien B, Schumann P, Mellmann A, Antonenka U, Heesemann J and Becker K (2007) *Staphylococcus pettenkoferi* sp. nov., a novel coagulase-negative staphylococcal species isolated from human clinical specimens. *International Journal of Systematic and Evolutionary Microbiology* **57**: 1543-1548

Tsubakishita S, Arai KK, Sasaki T and Hiramatsu K (2010) Origin and molecular evolution of the determinant of methicillin resistance in staphylococci. *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* **54**: 4352-4359

Tsuji BT, MacLean RD, Dresser LD, McGavin MJ and Simor (2011) Impact of accessory gene regulator (*agr*) dysfunction on vancomycin pharmacodynamics among Canadian community and healthcare-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Annals of Clinical Microbiology and Antimicrobials* **10**: 20 (<http://www.ann-clinmicrob.com/content/10/1/20>).

Turlej A, Hryniewicz W and Empel J (2011) Staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* (SCC*mec*) classification and typing methods: an overview. *Polish Journal of Microbiology* **60**: 95-103

Turnidge J, Rao N, Chang FY, Fowler VG, Kellie SM, Arnold S, Lee BY and Tristan A (2008) *Staphylococcus aureus*. Available online: <http://www.antimicrobe.org/samplestaphylococcus.asp> (Accessed: June 2013)

Udo EE, Pearman JW and Grubb WB (1993) Genetic analysis of community isolates of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in Western Australia. *Journal of Hospital Infection* **25**: 97-108

Udo EE (2013) Community-acquired methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: The new face of an old foe? *Medical Principles and Practice* (doi: 10.1159/000354201)

Valsesia G, Rossi M, Bertschy S and Pfyffer EG (2010) Emergence of SCC mec type IV and SCC mec type V methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* containing the Panton-Valentne leukocidin genes in a large academic teaching hospital in central Switzerland: external invaders or persisting circulators? *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **48**: 720-725

Vandenesch F, Naimi T, Enright MC, Lina G, Nimmo GR, Heffernan H, Nadia L, Bes M, Greenland T, Reverdy M-E and Etienne J (2003) Community-acquired methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* carrying Panton-Valentine leukocidin genes: Worldwide emergence. *Emerging Infectious Diseases* **9**: 978-984

Vanderhaeghen W, Vandendriessche S, Crombé F, Dispas M, Denis O, Hermans K, Haesebrouck F and Butaye P (2012) Species and staphylococcal cassette chromosome mec (SCC mec) diversity among methicillin resistant non *Staphylococcus aureus* staphylococci isolated from pigs. *Veterinary Microbiology* **158**: 123-128

Van Hal SJ, Stark D, Lockwood B, Marriott D and Harkness J (2007) Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) detection: comparison of two molecular methods (IDI-MRSA PCR assay and Geno Type MRSA direct PCR assay) with three selective MRSA agars (MRSA ID, MRSA *Select* and CHROM agar MRSA) for use with infection-control swabs. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **45**: 2486-2490

Vindel A, Cuevas O, Cercenado E and Bautista V (2009) Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in Spain: molecular epidemiology and utility of different typing methods. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **16**: 1620-1627

Weile J and Knabbe C (2009) Current applications and future trends of molecular diagnostics in clinical bacteriology. *Analytical and Bioanalytical Chemistry* **394**: 731-742

Wertheim HFL, Melles DC, Vos MC, Van Leeuwen W, Van Belkum A, Verbrugh HA and Nouwen JL (2005) The role of nasal carriage in *Staphylococcus aureus* infection. *The Lancet Infectious Diseases* **5**: 751-762

Wesson CA, Liou LE, Todd KM, Bohach GA, Trumble WR and Bayles KW (1998) *Staphylococcus aureus agr* and *sar* global regulators influence internalisation and induction of apoptosis. *Infection and Immunity* **66**: 5238-5243

Wolters M, Rhode H, Maier T, Belmar-Campos C, Franke G, Scherpe S, Aepfelbacher M and Christner M (2011) MALDI-TOF MS fingerprinting allows for discrimination of major methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* lineages. *International Journal of Medical Microbiology* **301**: 64-68

Yamamoto T, Nishiyama A, Takano T, Yabe S, Higuchi W, Razvina O and Shi D (2010) Community-acquired methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: Community transmission, pathogenesis and drug resistance. *Journal of Infection and Chemotherapy* **16**: 225-254

Zapun A, Martel CC and Vernet T (2007) Penicillin-binding proteins and β -lactam resistance. *FEMS Microbiology Reviews* **32**: 361-385

Zhang K, McClure J, Elsayed S, Louie T and Conly JM (2005) Novel multiplex-PCR assay for characterisation and concomitant subtyping of staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* types I to V in methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **43**: 5026-5033

Zhang K, McClure JA and Conly JM (2012) Enhanced multiplex-PCR assay for typing of staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* types I to V in methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Molecular and Cellular Probes* **26**: 218-221

CHAPTER 3

Genetic diversity of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains in the Pretoria region in South Africa

The editorial style of the Journal of Clinical Microbiology and Infection was followed in this chapter

3.1 ABSTRACT

Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) causes severe infections in humans. This study aimed to identify and characterise 194 clinical MRSA isolates obtained from a tertiary academic hospital in the Pretoria region collected during April 2010 to August 2011. One of the isolates was contaminated and excluded from the study. The 193 isolates were typed using three PCR-based genotyping techniques (*spa*, *agr* and MLST typing). The strains were separated into 12 distinct clusters (A to L) with subclusters by *spa* typing. Three of the four *agr* groups were identified in this study: 84.5% (163/193) as *agr* group I, 7.3% (14/193) as *agr* III, 4.7% (9/193) as *agr* II, 3.6% (7/193) as *agr* I and III. No *agr* group IV was detected. Representative isolates were selected for *spa* sequencing and MLST typing. The *spa* types and sequence types identified in this study are in agreement with previously characterised genotypes in South Africa and worldwide. The sequence types (ST) obtained corresponded to the frequently described pandemic clonal complexes, which have been reported worldwide *spa* type t012-ST36/CC30, *spa* type t037-ST239/CC8, *spa* type t891-ST22/CC22 and *spa* type t1257-ST612/CC8. The detection of an epidemic clone (EMRSA-15) t891-ST22/CC22 harbouring the PVL gene as well as a pandemic clone t037-ST239/CC8 in this clinical setting is alarming. The results from this study emphasise the need for strict infection control policies to prevent possible outbreaks of these epidemic and pandemic clones that are already circulating in this clinical setting.

Keywords: *mecA*, MRSA, *spa*, *agr*, MLST

3.2 INTRODUCTION

Staphylococcus aureus (*S. aureus*) is one of the most important and virulent bacterial pathogens, which is responsible for infections seen in healthcare and community settings (Kim, 2009). The bacterium causes diseases ranging from mild infections of the skin and soft tissue to life threatening sepsis (Havaei *et al.*, 2010). The emergence of *S. aureus* strains, which are resistant to methicillin [methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)] and other antimicrobial agents, such as rifampicin and chloramphenicol are of major concern (Dulon *et al.*, 2011). Infections caused by MRSA were previously associated with healthcare settings (healthcare-associated MRSA) but the emergence of community-associated MRSA (CA-MRSA) worsened the challenges associated with MRSA (Nastaly *et al.*, 2010; Moussa *et al.*, 2012). Community-associated MRSA strains are associated with severe infections that can result in necrotising fasciitis or even death in otherwise healthy people outside of the healthcare setting (Wang *et al.*, 2007). Community-associated MRSA differs from the HA-MRSA in various ways: (i) the lack of traditional risk factors associated with MRSA among patients, (ii) a susceptibility pattern with resistance to few antimicrobial agents and (iii) the inclusion of specific virulence factors (Weber, 2005; Lo and Wang, 2011).

Community-associated MRSA has been reported to be a major cause of skin and soft tissue infections (SSTI), endocarditis and necrotising pneumonia (Otto, 2012). Panton-Valentine leukocidin (PVL) is a toxin, which is lethal to leukocytes and is often reported in strains of CA-MRSA (Boakes *et al.*, 2011; Aschbacher *et al.*, 2012). Genome sequencing of two CA-MRSA strains (USA300 and USA400), showed that 20% of the unique genomic contents of CA-MRSA strains, resulted from horizontal acquisition of different mobile genetic elements, such as prophages and pathogenicity islands (Diep and Otto, 2008). These mobile genetic elements are not present in conventional HA-MRSA strains such as COL, N315 and MRSA252 (Diep and Otto, 2008). However, Li *et al.* (2009) reported that for the clonal complex 8 (CC8) lineage (predominantly the USA300), the differential expression of core genome-encoded virulence factors rather than mobile genetic elements (MGEs) have a profound effect on the evolution of virulence. This was based on observations that: (i) the high virulence capacity of USA300 was established in its progenitor strain USA500 before the possession of other virulent determinants on MGEs, (ii) virulence factor expression were comparable among clones within the specific CC8 lineages and (iii) differential distribution of

virulence genes among CC8 strains tested did not explain the observed differences in virulence by gene presence (Li *et al.*, 2009).

It has been noted that CA-MRSA strains has successfully integrated into the healthcare environment, which makes it highly essential to distinguish between the origin of different strains (HA-MRSA and CA-MRSA) (Skrupky *et al.*, 2009). Different types of staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* elements (SCC*mec*) have been identified in *S. aureus* strains (Basset *et al.*, 2013). It was reported that methicillin susceptible *S. aureus* (MSSA) strains evolved to become MRSA by the acquisition of the SCC*mec*, which carries the *mecA* gene (Chongtrakool *et al.*, 2006). Staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* element eleven (SCC*mec* XI), which carries a new *mecC* element was recently discovered in humans and animals from several European countries (Basset *et al.*, 2013). The *mecC* has a 70% sequence homology with *mecA* genes and has raised concerns about the detection of MRSA carrying this element (Basset *et al.*, 2013). Eleven SCC*mec* types and four subtypes of SCC*mec* type IV has been identified, which differs in the structure and size of the SCC*mec* chromosome (Turlej *et al.*, 2011; Basset *et al.*, 2013). Healthcare-associated MRSA strains harbour primarily SCC*mec* types I, II, III and VI (Al-Rawahi *et al.*, 2007). Healthcare-associated MRSA strains are multi-drug resistant (Otter and French, 2008). Community-associated MRSA carries the SCC*mec* types IV, V, VII, VIII, IX, X and XI and are resistant to only β -lactam antibiotics and sensitive to non- β -lactam antibiotics (Turlej *et al.*, 2011).

The precise and rapid determination of methicillin resistance is of key importance in the diagnosis of infections caused by *S. aureus* (Anand *et al.*, 2009). Phenotypic techniques used for the detection of MRSA are time consuming and the likelihood of misidentifying MRSA based on phenotypic testing has been reported in the past (Bhutia *et al.*, 2012). Molecular-based methods are used to improve the limitations of phenotypic methods by providing rapid identification and characterisation of these pathogens (Stefani *et al.*, 2012). Furthermore, different genotyping techniques are available to discriminate between clinically relevant *S. aureus* isolates, although it does not always form part of the routine diagnostic analysis (Trindade *et al.*, 2003). The criteria for the evaluation of these genotyping techniques are divided into: (i) the performance criteria (typeability, reproducibility, discriminatory power and agreement between typing techniques) and (ii) convenience criteria (versatility, rapidity, ease of execution and interpretation) (Trindade *et al.*, 2003).

Genotyping methods used for typing *S. aureus* strains are: pulsed-field gel electrophoresis (PFGE), SCC*mec* typing, staphylococcal protein A typing (*spa* typing) and multilocus sequence typing (MLST) (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008; Skrupky *et al.*, 2009). Pulsed-field gel electrophoresis is regarded as the gold standard method for typing *S. aureus* strains and particularly for isolates, which are MRSA (Tenover and Goering, 2009). The PFGE typing assay is based on a variation of standard gel electrophoresis using an alternating voltage gradient, which ensures a better resolution of large DNA molecules (Kim, 2009). The PFGE typing assay has a good discriminatory power and reproducibility at the inter-laboratory level when standardised protocols are used (Rasschaert *et al.*, 2009). This technique (PFGE) has been used to identify and document major clones of MRSA (Brazilian, Hungarian, Iberian, New York/Japan and paediatric) worldwide (Faria *et al.*, 2008). It has; however, been reported that PFGE is tedious, labour intensive and time consuming (Mehndiratta and Bhalla, 2012). Genotyping methods, such as *spa*, *agr* and MLST are more discriminatory methods for detecting evolutionary changes and transmission events between strains of *S. aureus* (Mehndiratta and Bhalla, 2012).

Different studies have documented MRSA strains in South Africa (Shittu *et al.*, 2009; Moodley *et al.*, 2010; Jansen van Rensburg *et al.*, 2011). However, information regarding the genetic diversity of MRSA in the Pretoria region using *spa*, *agr* and MLST typing is limited. This study is a follow-up of another study where PFGE, the gold standard and SCC*mec* typing has been used to determine the genetic relatedness of 194 clinical MRSA strain. The aim of this study was to identify and determine the genetic diversity of healthcare-associated MRSA (HA-MRSA) and community-associated MRSA (CA-MRSA) isolates that are circulating in a tertiary academic hospital using *spa*, *agr* and MLST typing. The results obtained were compared to that of PFGE to possibly find (i) a more rapid and easier genotyping method and (ii) to determine clones of MRSA circulating in this clinical setting in order to make recommendations regarding surveillance and monitoring.

3.3 MATERIALS AND METHODS

3.3.1 Study setting, collection and confirmation of MRSA isolates

This was a semi-quantitative study conducted at the Research Division of the Department of Medical Microbiology University of Pretoria (UP) / National Health Laboratory Service

(NHLS). One hundred and ninety four MRSA isolates collected from April 2010 to August 2011 which have been analysed by the Diagnostic Laboratory, Department of Medical Microbiology UP/NHLS were included in this study. *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates were received as MRSA positive after the routine diagnostic analysis was performed. The isolates were confirmed as MRSA using the DNase test, Kirby-Bauer disc diffusion method and Vitek2 system (bioMérieux, Mary l'Etoile, France). The plates were incubated at 37°C for 18 h to 24 h. A Gram-stain was performed to confirm that the isolates were not contaminated. The isolates were stored in 50% glycerol (Merck, Darmstadt, Germany) at -70°C (New Brunswick Scientific, England) for future use (Appendix C).

The PFGE and SCC*mec* genotyping of these MRSA isolates was part of another MSc study conducted in the department (S189/2010). The same 194 isolate were used for this study. This study was approved by the Student Ethics Committee of the University of Pretoria (Protocol number S175/2011).

3.3.2 Total DNA extraction of the MRSA isolates

Bacterial DNA extraction of the 194 MRSA isolates was performed using the ZR Fungal/Bacterial DNA MiniPrep (Zymo Research, Thermo Scientific, USA), according to the manufacturer's instructions, which was optimised with the addition of β -mercaptoethanol to the Fungal/Bacterial DNA binding buffer to a final concentration of 0.5% (v/v) (Appendix B).

3.3.3 Multiplex-PCR assay for the detection of the 16S rRNA, *mecA* and PVL genes of the MRSA isolates

A multiplex PCR assay was performed on the clinical isolates based on the method described by McClure *et al.* (2006). Three primer pairs specific for the 16S rRNA, *mecA* and *luk-PV* genes were used (Table 3.1). A CA-MRSA strain (ATCC CA05) served as a positive control. The primer pair concentrations of 0.2 μ M, 0.24 μ M and 0.2 μ M from McClure *et al.* (2006) was modified to 2 μ M for each primer. The PCR assay included 5 μ l of the DNA template in a 50 μ l final volume. The M-PCR assay reaction compositions consisted of 25 μ l of 2X QIAGEN M-PCR master mix (Qiagen, Germany), 5 μ l of 10X primer mix and 15 μ l of RNase-free water. The PCR programme for the G-storm thermocycler (Vacutec, UK) included an initial activation step at 95°C for 15 min, followed by 35 cycles of denaturation at

94°C for 45 s, annealing at 57°C for 90 s, extension at 72°C for 90 s and a final extension step at 72°C for 10 min. Analysis of the PCR products is shown in Section 3.3.7.

3.3.4 PCR assay for the *spa* typing of the MRSA isolates

The PCR assay included three primers (SPA1, SPA2 and SPA3), that selectively amplified the repetitive sequence region (Fc binding region and the X region) of the *S. aureus* specific protein A gene. The primers used for the *spa* typing was obtained from a previously published study (Schmitz *et al.*, 1998). The primer concentrations were modified for the PCR assay (TaKaRa ExTaq PCR kit, Takara Biotechnology, Japan). The primer pair concentration was adjusted to 0.32 μ M for each primer. The primer pair concentration and primer sequences are shown in Table 3.2.

The PCR reaction set-up included 5 μ l of the DNA template in a final volume of 25 μ l. The reaction composition consisted of 0.125 μ l (TaKaRa *Taq* DNA polymerase, Takara Biotechnology, Japan), 2 μ l of dNTPs (2.5 mM each), 2.5 μ l of 10X PCR buffer (10 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.3, 500 mM KCl and 15 mM MgCl₂), 0.32 μ M of each primer (one forward primer SPA1 and two reverse primers SPA2 and SPA3) and 15 μ l of RNase-free water. The PCR amplification was performed using the G-storm thermocycler (Vacutec, UK) according to the method by Schmitz *et al.* (1998), with the following modifications: an initial activation step at 94°C for 15 min followed by 35 cycles of denaturation at 94°C for 30 s, annealing at 52°C for 40 s and extension at 72°C for 50 s followed by a final extension step at 72°C for 5 min. The analysis of the amplified PCR products is discussed in section 3.3.7.

Ten representative isolates were selected for *spa* sequencing based on the results from PFGE. The isolates were: 2, 71, 100, 125, 131, 133, 134, 143, 165 and 183. The X region of the *spa* gene was amplified with primers from a previously published study (Larsen *et al.*, 2008). The primer concentrations and primer sequences are shown in Table 3.3. The PCR assay included 3 μ l of prepared DNA template in a 25 μ l final reaction mixture. The reaction composition consisted of 12.5 μ l of the 2X QIAGEN M-PCR master mix (Qiagen, Germany), 2 μ M of each primer and 7 μ l of RNase-free water (Qiagen, Germany). The PCR cycling programme for the G-storm thermocycler (Vacutec, UK) included an initial activation step of 95°C for 15 min followed by 32 cycles of denaturation of 94°C for 30 s, annealing at 56°C for 30 s and extension at 72°C for 1 min followed by a final extension at 72°C for 7 min. The analysis of

the amplified PCR products is discussed in section 3.3.7. The amplicons after gel electrophoresis were sent to Inqaba biotec for sequencing.

3.3.5 Duplex PCR assay for the *agr* typing of the MRSA isolates

The PCR assay for *agr* typing consisted of a forward primer (used for all reactions) and four reverse primers (*agr* group I, II, III and IV) as described by Shopsin *et al.* (2003). To differentiate between the similar sized products of the reverse primers of *agr* group I (440 bp) plus III (406 bp) and *agr* group II (572 bp) plus *agr* group IV (588 bp) duplex PCR assays were performed for each isolate. The duplex PCR assays were performed using (i) the forward primer and two reverse primers for *agr* group I and *agr* group II and (ii) the forward primer and two reverse primers for *agr* group III and group IV.

The primer concentrations and nucleotide sequences are shown in Table 3.4. Each duplex PCR assay included 5 µl of prepared DNA template in a final reaction of 25 µl mixture. The reaction composition consisted of 12.5 µl Maxima[®] Hot Start Green PCR Master Mix (2X), supplied in 2X hot start PCR buffer, Mg²⁺ and dNTPs (Fermentas, Thermo Scientific, USA). The PCR amplification was performed using the G-storm thermocycler (Vacutec, UK) with modification to the cycling profile of Shopsin and colleagues (2003), with an initial activation step at 95°C for 4 min followed by 35 cycles of denaturation at 95°C for 30 s, annealing at 55°C for 30 s and extension at 72°C for 1 min and a final extension step at 72°C for 10 min. Analysis of the amplified PCR products is as described in section 3.3.7.

3.3.6 Multilocus sequence typing analysis of selected MRSA isolates

The fragments of seven housekeeping genes [carbamate kinase (*arc*), shikimate dehydrogenase (*aroE*), glycerol kinase (*glpF*), guanylate kinase (*gmk*), phosphate acetyltransferase (*pta*) triosephosphate isomerase (*tpi*) and acetyl coenzyme A acetyltransferase (*yqiL*)] were amplified using the primers described by Enright *et al.* (2000). The primer concentrations and nucleotide sequences are shown in Table 3.5. The PCR assay included 3 µl of prepared DNA template in a final volume of 25 µl. The reaction composition consisted of 12.5 µl of the 2X QIAGEN M-PCR master mix (Qiagen, Germany), 2 µM of each primer (forward and reverse) and 7 µl of RNase-free water (Qiagen, Germany). The PCR amplification was performed using the G-storm thermocycler (Vacutec, UK), with

modifications to the cycling profile by Enright *et al* (2000), with an initial activation step of 95°C for 15 min followed by 32 cycles of denaturation of 94°C for 30 s, annealing at 56°C for 30 s, extension at 72°C for 1 min and a final extension step at 72°C for 7 min. Analysis of the amplified PCR product was as described in section 3.3.6. The amplicons after gel electrophoresis were cleaned using the Zymoclean gel DNA recovery kit (Fermentas, Thermo Scientific, USA) (Appendix B) and sent to Inqaba biotec for sequencing.

3.3.7 Analysis of the PCR products

Amplified products were visualised for specific fragment size bands under UV illumination (TFM-26 Ultra Transilluminator, UVP, Upland, California) after electrophoretic separation at 100 V for 1 h on a 3% (m/v) SeaKem® LE agarose gel (Lonza, Rockland, USA) for *spa* typing in 1X TBE buffer [45 mM Tris-borate (pH 8.0) (Sigma Chemical co, USA), 0.5 M EDTA (Promega, Madison, USA)] and a 100 bp molecular weight marker (Fermentas, Thermo Scientific, USA) was included as a reference in the first and last lane. A 1% (m/v) SeaKem® LE agarose gel (Lonza, Rockland, USA) was used for multiplex PCR assay for 16S rRNA, *mecA*, PVL, *agr* and MLST analysis and a 50 bp molecular weight marker (Fermentas, Thermo Scientific, USA) was included as reference in the first and last lane. The agarose gel used contained 5 µl of a 20 µg/ml of ethidium bromide stock solution (Promega, Madison, USA) (Appendix B). Images were captured using a digital gel documentation system (DigiDoc-It Imaging System, UVP, Upland, Sweden).

3.3.8 Analysis of data

The sample size of 194 randomly collected MRSA isolates was analysed using percentages. The clonal diversity of the MRSA strains were grouped into clusters from the dendrogramme and expressed as percentages.

The resulting *spa* patterns obtained after gel electrophoresis were analysed with the GelComparII software (Applied Maths, Belgium) programme using the Dice Coefficient and the unweighted pair group method with arithmetic mean (UPGMA) to construct a dendrogramme which showed the genetic diversity of MRSA strains analysed. A 60% similarity value was used as a cut-off value for cluster definition to group isolates into clusters

and a 80% similarity was used as a cut-off value for cluster definition to group isolates into subclusters.

The *spa* types were determined using the Ridom StaphType software (Ridom GmbH, Würzburg, Germany). After providing the input sequence (ABI format), Ridom StaphType software (Ridom GmbH, Würzburg, Germany) attaches to each called base a quality value, which corresponds to a sequence error probability (Harmsen *et al.*, 2003). The software constructs a consensus sequence, detects the *spa* repeats and assigns a *spa* type (Harmsen *et al.*, 2003)

The amplicons for the MLST typing were sequenced in both directions (forward and reverse). The sequences obtained for each of the housekeeping genes were analysed using the CLC main workbench version 6.0 (CLC, Denmark). The sequences were uploaded on the MLST database (<http://saureus.mlst.net/sql/multiplelocus>) where allelic profiles and sequence types were assigned.

3.4 RESULTS

3.4.1 Demographics

The MRSA isolates were obtained from female and male patients (aged: 1 day to 78 y with an average of 39 y) in a range of wards, which included: surgery, paediatric, cardiothoracic, outpatients, intensive care unit, anti-retroviral clinic, oncology, urology, gynaecology, nephrology and internal medicine. The MRSA isolates were recovered from blood cultures (39%, $n=75/194$), pus swabs (23%, $n=44/194$), central venous pressure tips (13%, $n=25/194$), tissue (8%, $n=16/194$), endotracheal aspirate (Luki) (6%, $n=12/194$), sputum (4%, $n=7/194$), unknown (3%, $n=6/194$), urine (2%, $n=4/194$), briviac tip (1%, $n=2/194$), bone fragment (0.5%, $n=1/194$), catheter tip (0.5%, $n=1/194$) and cerebrospinal fluid (0.5%, $n=1/194$). The MRSA isolates were subcultured on blood agar plates (Oxoid, England) to obtain single colonies for Gram-staining.

3.4.2 Prevalence of the 16S rRNA, *mecA* and PVL genes

All 194 MRSA isolates were 100% (194/194) positive for the 16S rRNA (756 bp) and *mecA* (310 bp) genes. Only one of the isolates (isolate 71) was positive for the PVL (433 bp) gene (Figure 3.3).

3.4.3 Characterisation of MRSA isolates using *spa* typing

Out of the 193 isolates, six isolates were untypeable with *spa* typing. All of these isolates were excluded from this study and the remaining 187 MRSA isolates revealed twelve distinct clusters designated A to L and four outliers (Figure 3.1). The majority of the isolates belonged to cluster A [23.5% (44/187)] and B [22.9% (43/187)], followed by E [13.4% (25/187)], D [10.2% (19/187)], G [8.6% (16/187)], K [4.3% (8/187)], C [3.7% (7/187)], J [3.2% (6/187)], L [2.7% (5/187)], H [2.1% (4/187)], F [1.6% (3/187)] and I [1.6% (3/187)], while the four outliers made up for 2.1% (4/187). Cluster A had five subclusters (A1 to A5), cluster B had four subclusters (B1 to B4), cluster C and D had two subclusters each (C1 and C2; D1 and D2, respectively), cluster E had four subclusters (E1 to E4) and cluster G and K had two subclusters (G1 and G2; K1 and K2, respectively).

Four *spa* types were identified from the *spa* sequencing. Three isolates (2, 100 and 143) belonged to *spa* type t1257 with the *spa* repeats-pattern: 11-19-34-05-17-34-24-34-22-25. Isolates 125, 131 and 133 belonged to *spa* type t037 with *spa* repeats-pattern: 15-12-16-02-25-17-24. Isolate 71 was identified as, *spa* type t891 with *spa* repeats-pattern: 26-23-13-23-31-05-17-25-17-25-28 while isolate 183 was identified as, *spa* type t012 with *spa* repeats-pattern: 15-12-16-02-16-02-25-17-24-24. Isolates 134 and 165 remained untypeable (Table 3.6).

3.4.4 Characterisation of MRSA isolates using *agr* typing

One contaminated MRSA isolate was excluded from the *agr* typing. A total of 193 MRSA isolates were analysed using the *agr* assay. The *agr* typing assay identified the majority of isolates as follow: 84.5% (163/193) as *agr* group I, 7.3% (14/193) as *agr* group III, 4.7% (9/193) as *agr* group II and 3.6% (7/193) as *agr* group I and III (Figures 3.2, 3.3 and 3.4). No

agr group IV isolates were detected. Table 3.7 shows the distribution of the *agr* groups among the *spa* clusters identified from the dendrogramme.

3.4.5 Characterisation of MRSA isolates using multilocus sequence typing

Ten representative isolates were selected for MLST typing, three of the isolates namely numbers 125, 134 and 165 were untypeable by *spa* typing (Table 3.). Isolate 71 belonged to ST22, isolate 100 to ST612, isolates 131 and 133 belonged to ST239, isolate 143 to ST612 and isolate 183 to ST36. Sequence type 22 with allelic profile 7-6-1-5-8-8-6 belonged to clonal complex 22 (CC22), ST36 with allelic profile 2-2-2-2-3-3-2 belonged to CC30, ST239 with allelic profile 2-3-1-1-4-4-3 and ST612 with allelic profile 3-3-1-1-4-88-83 both belonged to CC8. The *tpi* gene for isolate 125 had a new allele number (240) (2-3-1-1-4-240-3). The allele number for the *yqiL* gene for isolate 2 was not found on the MLST website (3-3-1-1-4-88-?). The allelic numbers for *arcC*, *aroE* and *pta* gene for isolates 134 and 165 was not found on the MLST website.

3.4.6 Antimicrobial susceptibility for the ten representative isolates for *spa* sequencing and MLST analysis using the Vitek2 automated system (bioMérieux, Mary l'Etoile, France)

The Vitek2 automated system (bioMérieux, Mary l'Etoile, France), showed that two of the isolates (2 and 71) were resistant to glycopeptides (teicoplanin and vancomycin). The interpretation of the antibiotic susceptibility profiles was performed according to the clinical laboratory standards institute (CLSI) guidelines of 2013. However, the E-test micro-dilution showed that isolate (2 and 71) were sensitive to teicoplanin (0.75 µg/ml) and vancomycin (1.0 µg/ml).

In this study the two isolates (131 and 133), which belonged to ST239, showed resistance to the following antibiotics: ciprofloxacin (≥ 8 µg/ml), clindamycin (≤ 0.25 µg/ml), erythromycin (≥ 8 µg/ml), gentamicin (≥ 16 µg/ml), oxacillin (≥ 4 µg/ml), tetracycline (≥ 16 µg/ml) and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (≥ 320 µg/ml). However, both isolates (131 and 133) were sensitive to teicoplanin (≤ 0.5 µg/ml) and vancomycin (2 µg/ml; ≤ 0.5 µg/ml).

The two isolates (100 and 143) identified as ST612 in this study showed resistance to the following antibiotics (ciprofloxacin ($\geq 8 \mu\text{g/ml}$), clindamycin ($\leq 0.25 \mu\text{g/ml}$), erythromycin ($\geq 8 \mu\text{g/ml}$), gentamicin ($\geq 16 \mu\text{g/ml}$), tetracycline ($\geq 16 \mu\text{g/ml}$), trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole ($\geq 320 \mu\text{g/ml}$), oxacillin ($\geq 4 \mu\text{g/ml}$) and rifampicin ($\geq 32 \mu\text{g/ml}$). The isolates (100 and 143) were sensitive to teicoplanin ($\leq 0.5 \mu\text{g/ml}$) and vancomycin ($1 \mu\text{g/ml}; \leq 0.25 \mu\text{g/ml}$). Isolate (71) identified as ST22, was resistant to the following antibiotics (clindamycin ($\geq 8 \mu\text{g/ml}$), erythromycin ($\geq 8 \mu\text{g/ml}$), fusidic acid ($\geq 32 \mu\text{g/ml}$), gentamicin ($\geq 16 \mu\text{g/ml}$), teicoplanin ($\geq 32 \mu\text{g/ml}$), tetracycline ($\geq 16 \mu\text{g/ml}$), trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole ($\geq 320 \mu\text{g/ml}$), oxacillin ($\geq 8 \mu\text{g/ml}$), rifampicin ($\geq 32 \mu\text{g/ml}$) and vancomycin (≥ 32). Isolate 183 identified as (ST36/CC30) was resistant to (ciprofloxacin ($\geq 8 \mu\text{g/ml}$), clindamycin ($\geq 8 \mu\text{g/ml}$), erythromycin ($\geq 8 \mu\text{g/ml}$), moxifloxacin ($\geq 8 \mu\text{g/ml}$) and oxacillin ($\geq 4 \mu\text{g/ml}$). This isolate was sensitive to teicoplanin and vancomycin.

Isolate 125 was resistant to (ciprofloxacin ($\geq 8 \mu\text{g/ml}$), clindamycin ($\leq 0.25 \mu\text{g/ml}$), erythromycin ($\geq 8 \mu\text{g/ml}$), moxifloxacin ($\geq 8 \mu\text{g/ml}$), oxacillin ($\geq 4 \mu\text{g/ml}$), rifampicin ($\geq 16 \mu\text{g/ml}$), tetracycline ($\geq 16 \mu\text{g/ml}$), tigecycline ($0.5 \mu\text{g/ml}$) and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole ($\geq 320 \mu\text{g/ml}$). This isolate (125) showed an intermediate resistance to fusidic acid (4). Isolate (125) was sensitive to teicoplanin (2) and vancomycin (2). Isolate 2 was resistant to (clindamycin ($\geq 8 \mu\text{g/ml}$), erythromycin ($\geq 8 \mu\text{g/ml}$), fusidic acid ($\geq 32 \mu\text{g/ml}$), gentamicin ($\geq 16 \mu\text{g/ml}$), rifampicin ($\geq 32 \mu\text{g/ml}$), oxacillin ($\geq 4 \mu\text{g/ml}$), tetracycline ($8 \mu\text{g/ml}$), teicoplanin ($\geq 32 \mu\text{g/ml}$) and vancomycin ($\geq 32 \mu\text{g/ml}$).

The two isolates (134 and 165) were resistant to (clindamycin ($\leq 0.25 \mu\text{g/ml}$), erythromycin ($\geq 8 \mu\text{g/ml}$), gentamicin ($\geq 16 \mu\text{g/ml}$), rifampicin ($\geq 32 \mu\text{g/ml}$), oxacillin ($\geq 4 \mu\text{g/ml}$), tetracycline ($\geq 16 \mu\text{g/ml}; 2 \mu\text{g/ml}$), trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole ($80 \mu\text{g/ml}; 160 \mu\text{g/ml}$). Isolate 165 showed an intermediate resistance to fusidic acid ($4 \mu\text{g/ml}$) and ciprofloxacin ($2 \mu\text{g/ml}$). The two isolates [134 ($2 \mu\text{g/ml}$) and 165 ($8 \mu\text{g/ml}$)] were sensitive to teicoplanin and vancomycin.

3.5 DISCUSSION

In the current study the molecular typing methods *spa*, *agr* and MLST were used for the characterisation of MRSA isolates. Ten representative isolates were chosen for the *spa* sequencing and MLST analysis based on the specific PFGE pulsotypes obtained for the same

clinical isolates (Maphanga, 2013). Two isolates (125 and 170) were untypeable by PFGE. Maphanga, (2013) identified eleven pulsotypes A to K from the PFGE, with pulsotype A being the major pulsotype [(57% (110/191)] having subtypes A1 to A6. The ten representative isolates were chosen from PFGE pulsotype A (131 and 133), subtypes of pulsotype A [A3 (isolate 71) and A6 (isolate 100)], pulsotype B (isolate 143), subtype of pulsotype B (B2 isolate 134), pulsotype E (isolate 2), pulsotype I (isolate 165) and pulsotype J (isolate 183). Isolate 125 was chosen as the tenth representative isolate.

The *spa* typing revealed twelve distinct clusters (A to L) with subclusters from clusters A (A1 to A5), B (B1 to B4), C (C1 and C2), D (D1 and D2), E (E1 to E4), G (G1 and G2) and K (K1 and K2). This study indicated six *spa* non-typeable MRSA isolates. These six non-typeable isolates may have been attributed to *S. aureus* strains that do not produce the surface protein A, lacking the *spa* gene. This is in agreement with different studies that have reported strains of *S. aureus* without the *spa* gene (Guzman *et al.*, 1992; Larsen *et al.*, 2008; Makgotlho *et al.*, 2009). Guzman *et al.* (1992) reported 5% (10/196) of *S. aureus* strains that lacked the protein A gene. However, it was documented that two of the isolates were misidentified as *S. hyicus* and *S. intermedius* (Guzman *et al.*, 1992). Larsen *et al.* (2008) reported 1.2% (9/759) of *S. aureus* isolates that lacked the protein A gene after identification by coagulase test and PCR detection for the *nuc* and *femA* gene. A study by Makgotlho *et al.* (2009), reported 5.2% (5/97) non-typeable MRSA isolates.

Although the *spa* typing depicted a higher discriminatory power compared to PFGE in this study, six isolates (Isolates 52, 125, 134, 138, 139 and 165) were untypeable using *spa* typing, while only two isolates (Isolates 125 and 170) were untypeable with PFGE typing. Similarities were noted in the PFGE and *spa* typing methods with some isolates sharing the same PFGE pulsotypes and *spa* cluster. According to the *spa* typing results 61.3% of the isolates which belonged to cluster A were identified as PFGE pulsotype A, 27.2% with *spa* cluster A belonged to subtypes of PFGE pulsotype A, 57.1% with *spa* cluster J belonged to PFGE pulsotype J. Three of the six untypeable isolates (138, 139 and 165) belonged to PFGE pulsotype I. Faria *et al.* (2008) reported that the *spa* and PFGE typing provided an excellent result for strains of MRSA. Faria *et al.* (2008) concluded that *spa* and PFGE typing provide the basic discriminatory power needed for local and long-term epidemiological surveillance. Different studies have however, reported the *spa* typing method to be rapid, less labour intensive and easier to interpret than the PFGE (Palavecino 2007; Vaino *et al.*, 2011). The *spa*

typing can be used to investigate outbreaks and the molecular evolution of MRSA strains (Vaino *et al.*, 2011).

Staphylococcal protein A sequencing was performed to compare the *spa* types with the profiles of international clones. The *spa* types (t012, t037, t891 and t1257) identified in this study have been reported worldwide including South Africa (Table 3.5) (Jansen van Rensburg *et al.*, 2011; Moodley *et al.*, 2010; Salam-Dreyer, 2010). The *spa* types t012 and t037 was reported by Jansen van Rensburg *et al.* (2011) in Cape Town from six different hospitals. Moodley *et al.* (2010) reported *spa* types t012, t037 and t891 from isolates collected between August 2005 to November 2006 at 15 state and eight private diagnostic microbiology laboratories in the nine provinces of South Africa. The four *spa* types identified in this study (t012, t037, t891 and t1257) were also identified at Tygerberg hospital, Western Cape Province in South Africa by Salam-Dreyer (2010). Staphylococcal protein A type t891 had the longest *spa* repeats-pattern (26-23-13-23-31-05-17-25-17-25-28), while *spa* type t037 had the shortest *spa* repeats-pattern (15-12-16-02-25-17-24). Isolates with the same sequence type (ST), belonged to the same *spa* types. Staphylococcal protein A type t012 (15-12-16-02-16-02-25-17-24-24) belonged to ST36 in this study, which is in agreement with the study conducted by Moodley *et al.* (2010). Three isolates (125, 131 and 133) identified as ST239 belonged to *spa* type t037 (15-12-16-02-25-17-24). The *spa* type t037 is most often associated with the pandemic Brazilian/Hungarian clone ST239 (Monecke *et al.*, 2011). This is in agreement with previous studies conducted by Shittu *et al.* (2009) and Moodley *et al.* (2010) that reported ST239 with *spa* type t037 in South Africa. Three isolates (2, 100 and 143) identified as ST612 belonged to *spa* type t1257. The *spa* type t1257 was one of the major *spa* types detected by Salam-Dreyer (2010). Isolate 125, which was untypeable by the *spa* typing PCR assay and PFGE was identified as *spa* type t1257 with *spa* sequencing, while isolates 134 and 165 remained untypeable. The only PVL positive isolate in this study ST22 belonged to *spa* type t891 (26-23-13-23-31-05-17-25-17-25-28). Moodley *et al.* (2010) detected only one PVL positive MRSA, which also belonged to the same *spa* type t891, ST22 (CC22).

The *agr* group IV, which is common among exfoliatin producing MRSA (causes staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome) strains was not detected in this study (Nastaly *et al.*, 2010). The recovery of three of the four *agr* groups in this study is in agreement with the reported data from Shopsin *et al.* (2003). A rapid PCR-based method was used to determine

the *agr* groups in *S. aureus* isolates obtained from a healthy population of children and their guardians in New York City, New York (Shopsin *et al.*, 2003). Some studies have detected all four *agr* groups, which might be due to ecological and geographical distribution (Sakoulas *et al.*, 2002; Nastaly *et al.*, 2010). Accessory gene regulator group I (84.5%) had the highest prevalence in this study. Most of the published studies have shown that 71% of all MRSA strains belong to *agr* group I, which makes it the most prevalent genotype (Sakoulas *et al.*, 2002; Nastaly *et al.*, 2010). Accessory gene regulator II, which is common in patients with endocarditis, is associated with reduced susceptibility to vancomycin and had a prevalence of 4.7% in this study. Accessory gene regulator I and III have been described as molecular markers of community-associated MRSA (Skrupky *et al.*, 2009; Nastaly *et al.*, 2010). This study showed a high prevalence of *agr* group I (84.5%), followed by *agr* group III (7.3%) indicating that most of the isolates were CA-MRSA, which is not in agreement with the SCCmec typing on the same clinical isolates (Maphanga, 2013). The results from SCCmec typing assays showed that 75% (145/194) belonged to HA-MRSA, while 25% (49/194) belonged to CA-MRSA (Appendix C) (Maphanga, 2013). These conflicting results emphasize the unspecific nature of the *agr* typing method to differentiate between HA-MRSA and CA-MRSA. This is supported by the findings by Wright *et al.* (2005) and Diep *et al.* (2006) that reported that there was no obvious pattern to the distribution of *agr* allotypes among MRSA lineages. A study by Holmes and colleagues (2005) reported that the majority of the United Kingdom epidemic healthcare-associated MRSA strains belonged to *agr* group I. Van Leeuwen *et al.* (2000) reported that the pathogenic ability of *S. aureus* is dependent on the production of exoproteins which is regulated by the *agr* operon. In most toxin mediated diseases, the *agr* alleles and toxin genes occurred with their parent strains and horizontal transfer played a marginal role (Jarraud *et al.*, 2002).

Strains of MRSA are often resistant to multiple classes of antimicrobial agents including aminoglycosides, macrolides-lincosamides-streptogramins (MLS) and tetracyclines (Denis *et al.*, 2006). The use of glycopeptides as an antimicrobial agent has increased in the past 20 years, due to the rise in MRSA and coagulase negative staphylococci (CoNS) (Tiwari, 2009). Glycopeptides are used to treat Gram-positive bacterial infections that are resistant to other known antimicrobial agents such as the β -lactams (Khane *et al.*, 2005). However, the need for effective new agent for the treatment of MRSA infections is now apparent due to emergence of MRSA strains with reduced susceptibility to these glycopeptides (Denis *et al.*, 2006). In this study the antimicrobial susceptibility testing including the minimum inhibitory

concentration (MICs) obtained using the Vitek2 automated system (bioMérieux, Mary l'Etoile, France) showed that two isolates (2 and 7) were resistant to glycopeptides (teicoplanin and vancomycin). However, the E-test micro-dilution showed that isolate (2 and 71) were sensitive to teicoplanin (0.75 µg/ml) and vancomycin (1.0 µg/ml). The discrepant results obtained emphasize the importance of the accurate performance of the antibiotic resistance protocol for the Vitek2 automated system (bioMérieux, Mary l'Etoile, France) to prevent false positive results

The dominant pulsotype from the PFGE typing technique [57% (110/191)] corresponded to the pulsotype A, which was identified as *spa* type t037-ST239 in this study. Isolates 131 and 133 identified as ST239/CC8 (2-3-1-1-4-4-3) belonged to PFGE A-SCC*mec*(II+SCC*mercury*)-*spa* type t037/ClusterB-*agr*III and PFGE A-SCC*mec*IVa-*spa* type t037/ClusterB-*agr*I respectively. The ST239 with an allelic profile of 2-3-1-1-4-4-3 is described as the oldest pandemic MRSA clone, which is resistant to multiple antibiotics and accounts for 90% of all HA-MRSA in China, Thailand, Turkey, Mainland Asia and South America (D'Souza *et al.*, 2010; Harris *et al.*, 2010).

The pandemic clone t037-ST239-MRSA-III (pulsotype A) has previously been reported in Cape Town, South Africa (Jansen van Rensburg *et al.*, 2011) and by Moodley *et al.* (2010). Pulsotype PFGE D-SCC*mec* III-*spa*CC12-ST239 was reported as one of the major clones circulating in the Pretoria region of South Africa (Moodley *et al.*, 2010). This pandemic clone ST239-MRSA-III, also referred to as the Brazilian/Hungarian clone, was the second major clone reported from healthcare facilities in the KwaZulu-Natal province, South Africa, between 2001 and 2003 (Shittu *et al.*, 2009). Sequence type 239 is a single locus variant of USA300, which is thought to have evolved from ST8 (D'Souza *et al.*, 2010). The TW20 clone, a variant of ST239 MRSA, was isolated as the cause of an outbreak in an intensive care unit in London (Harris *et al.*, 2010). According to Cirlan *et al.*, 2005, ST 239 is able to withstand background mutations without changing its ecological success. The nature of these changes does not seem to affect its potential to spread and it might even be considered that the mutation rate of ST239 may be part of its success in coping with different nosocomial ecosystems (Cirlan *et al.*, 2005).

Isolates 100 and 143 identified as ST612/CC8 (3-3-1-1-4-88-83) belonged to PFGE A6-SCC*mec*IVd-*spa* t1257/ClusterA-*agr*I and PFGE B-SCC*mec*IVa-*spa* type t1257/ClusterA –

agrIII, respectively. Clone ST612-MRSA-IV has been described as an infrequent clone isolated only in South Africa and Australia (Moodley *et al.*, 2010; Jansen van Rensburg *et al.*, 2011). Based on the genetic variation shown by PFGE and the number of *spa* types identified for ST612-MRSA-IV Jansen van Rensburg *et al.* (2011) suggested that: (i) it was an old clone, which has accumulated genetic variation over time and (ii) has undergone clonal expansion.

Isolate 71, which was the only PVL positive isolate from the 193 isolates analysed was identified as ST22/CC22 (7-6-1-5-8-8-6) and belonged to PFGE A3-SCC*mecV*-*spa* type t891/ClusterD-*agrI*. The low prevalence of the PVL gene [0.5% (1/194)] detected in this study is in agreement with a previous national study conducted by Moodley *et al.* (2010) during August 2005 to November 2006 in South Africa. The PVL positive MRSA detected by Moodley *et al.* (2010) was *spa* type t891/ST22/CC22 carrying the SCC*mec* type IV. Salam-Dreyer (2010), reported PVL positive MSSA with *spa* type t891 in South Africa. The SCC*mec* types IV and V are often found in strains of CA-MRSA (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008). Nadiq *et al.* (2010) reported the increase in SCC*mec* type IV and V and a decrease in SCC*mec* type III MRSA strains between 2006 to 2009 in Mumbai, India. Sequence type ST22/CC22 was initially isolated in the southeast of England in 1991 and referred to as the epidemic MRSA-15 (EMRSA-15) strain (Holden *et al.*, 2013). The spread of the strain was rapid in the UK and accounted for 60% of HA-MRSA bacteraemia in England in 2000 (Holden *et al.*, 2013). Large nosocomial outbreaks of PVL positive ST22/CC22 have been reported in other parts of the world such as Germany, Ireland, India and Hong Kong (Monecke *et al.*, 2011). Sequence type 22-MRSA-IV is also known as the UK-EMRSA-15, Irish AR06, Barnim Epidemic strain or Spanish type E13, which has spread worldwide (Monecke *et al.*, 2011). Sporadic cases of PVL negative ST22/CC22 have been reported in Saxony and South Africa (Moodley *et al.*, 2010; Monecke *et al.*, 2011). The presence of EMRSA-15 in epidemiologically unrelated settings suggests a polyphyletic origin, given that PVL-positive CC22-methicillin sensitive *S. aureus* (MSSA) are widespread (Monecke *et al.*, 2011). Studies have shown that ST22-MRSA has frequently demonstrated its ability to succeed and replace other established MRSA clones (Hsu *et al.*, 2005; Amorim *et al.*, 2007; Witte *et al.*, 2008).

Infections caused by MRSA continue to be a problem, with the dissemination of HA-MRSA in the community and the increase in reports of CA-MRSA causing healthcare-associated

infections (Marchese *et al.*, 2009). In addition ST22/CC22 have been reported in healthcare and community settings as well as in animals (horses, cats and dogs) (Monecke *et al.*, 2011). The PVL positive ST22 identified in this study belonged to *agr* group I, which is in agreement with studies that has reported *agr* I positive ST22 (Tristan *et al.*, 2007; Nadiq *et al.*, 2010). The possession of the PVL gene by ST22/CC22 (EMRSA-15) enhances the virulence of this clone that is already highly transmissible and poses an important health concern worldwide (Boakes *et al.*, 2010).

Isolate 183 identified as ST36/CC30 (2-2-2-2-3-3-2) belonged to PFGE J-SCC*mecII-spa* type t012/Cluster I-*agr*I and III. The ST36 is also referred to as EMRSA-16 (USA200) and has been reported in Australia, Austria, Belgium and Germany (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008). Moodley *et al.* (2010) and Jansen van Rensburg *et al.* (2011) reported ST36/CC30 in Cape Town and the Pretoria region in South Africa. Sequence type 36 is one of the most predominant nosocomial clones circulating in the UK (Deurenberg and Stobberingh, 2008). In the 1990s, CC30 was mostly isolated in the UK and Ireland (Monecke *et al.*, 2011). Although, it has been reported that CC30 has become increasingly rare worldwide, it is still being reported in Malta and South Africa (Monecke *et al.*, 2011).

The *tpi* gene for isolate 125 had a unique allele number (240) (2-3-1-1-4-240-3). Hence, the ST was not found on the MLST database (<http://saureus.mlst.net/sql/multiplelocus.asp>), though the allelic profile of the other six housekeeping genes (*arc*, *aroE*, *glpF*, *gmk*, *pta* and *yqiL*) (2-3-1-1-4-?-3) for this isolate was similar to that of ST239 (2-3-1-1-4-4-3). Further molecular investigation showed that isolate 125 was a mix culture consisting of *S. aureus* and *S. haemolyticus*. The allelic number for the *yqiL* gene for isolate 2 was not found on the MLST database (<http://saureus.mlst.net/sql/multiplelocus.asp>), (3-3-1-1-4-88-?). However, the six allelic numbers of the *arc*, *aroE*, *glpF*, *gmk*, *pta* and *tpi* genes of isolate 2 were similar to that of ST612, which is 3-3-1-1-4-88-83. The *spa* type of isolate 2, which was t1257, corresponded to those of isolates which belonged to ST612 in this study. The allele numbers for the *arc*, *aroE* and *pta* genes for isolates 134 and 165 were not found on the MLST database. These allele numbers could be new ones of sequence types yet to be described.

3.6 CONCLUSION

This study showed that the combination of different genotyping assays, such as *spa*, *agr* and MLST typing can accurately be used to determine the genetic diversity of MRSA strains. In comparison to PFGE, these PCR-based typing assays (*spa*, *agr* and MLST) were rapid and less labour intensive. The *spa* typing method in this study showed a high discriminatory power compared to the PFGE typing method used in the previous study on the same clinical isolates. The high prevalence of *agr* I, which is a molecular marker for community-associated MRSA, could suggest the possibility of healthcare-associated MRSA with community onset. Though, it has been reported that there is no obvious pattern associated with the distribution of *agr* allotypes among MRSA lineages (Wright *et al.*, 2005; Diep *et al.*, 2006). The sequence types and *spa* types identified in this study by MLST and *spa* typing are clones of MRSA that have been previously reported in South Africa and worldwide. Three of the sequence types ST22/CC22, ST36/CC30, ST239/CC8 identified in this study are among the predominant HA-MRSA MLST clonal complexes reported worldwide (Monecke *et al.*, 2011). The prevalence of these HA-MRSA clones suggests that some MRSA strains have unique abilities to survive in hospital environments and once established in healthcare settings are difficult to eradicate. The fourth sequence type (ST612/CC8) identified in this study has been described as an infrequent clone isolated in South Africa and Australia. The detection of a pandemic clone ST239/CC8 and an epidemic clone ST22/CC22 harbouring the PVL gene is alarming. Hence, it is important to implement strict infection control measures and conduct surveillance to prevent the outbreak of these clones in this clinical setting.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This research was supported by grants from the NHLS, University of Pretoria, RESCOM and NRF funding for rated researchers. Ms AM Salawu would like to thank the Animal and Zoonotic Diseases (AZD) Institutional Research Theme and the Institute for Cellular and Molecular Medicine (ICMM) Faculty Research Theme for the financial support received.

REFERENCES

Al-Rawahi G, Reynolds S, Peter DS, Forrester L, Kishi L, Chong T, Bowie W and Doyle WP. Community-associated CMRSA-10 (USA-300) is the predominant strain among methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains causing skin and soft tissue infections in patients presenting to the emergency department of a Canadian tertiary care hospital. *J Emer Med* 2007; 38:6-11.

Amorim ML, Faria NA, Oliveira DC, Vasconcelos C, Cabeda JC, Mendes AC, Calado E, Castro AP, Ramos MH, Amorim JM and De Lencastre H. Changes in the clonal nature and antibiotic resistance profiles of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates associated with spread of the EMRSA-15 clone in a tertiary care Portuguese hospital. *J Clin Microbiol* 2007; 45:2881-2888.

Anand KB, Agrawal P, Kumar S and Kapila K. Comparison of cefoxitin disc diffusion test, oxacillin screen agar and PCR for *mecA* gene for detection of MRSA. *Indian J Med Microbiol* 2009; 27:27-29.

Aschbacher R, Pichon B, Spoladore G, Pagani E, Innocenti P, Moroder L, Ganner M, Hill R, Pike R, Ganthaler O, Pagani L, Larcher C and Kearns A. High clonal heterogeneity of Panton-Valentine leukocidin-positive methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains from skin and soft-tissue infections in the Province of Bolzano, Northern Italy. *Int J Antimicrob Chemother* 2012; 39:522-525.

Barnes BE and Sampson DA. A literature review on community-acquired methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in the United States: Clinical information for primary care nurse practitioners. *J American Nur Prac* 2011; 23:23-32.

Basset P, Prod'hom G, Senn L, Greub G and Blanc DS. Very low prevalence of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* carrying *mecC* gene in western Switzerland. *J Hos Inf* 2013; 83:257-259.

Bhutia KO, Singh TS, Biswas S and Adhikari L. Evaluation of phenotypic with genotypic methods for species identification and detection of methicillin resistant in *Staphylococcus aureus*. Int J App Basic Med Res 2012; 2:84-91.

Boakes E, Kearns AM, Ganner M, Perry C, Warner M, Hill RL and Ellington MJ. Molecular diversity within clonal complex 22 methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* encoding Panton-Valentine leukocidin in England and Wales. Clin Microbiol Infect 2010; 17:140-145.

Boakes E, Kearns M, Ganner M, Perry C, Hill RL and Ellington MJ. Distinct bacteriophages encoding Panton-Valentine leukocidine (PVL) among international methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* clones harbouring PVL. J Clin Microbiol 2011; 49:684-692.

Chongtrakool P, Ito T, Ma XX, Kondo Y, Trakulsomboon S, Tiensasitorn C, Jamklang M, Chavalit T, Song JH and Hiramatsu K. Staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* (SCC*mec*) typing of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains isolated in 11 Asian countries: A proposal for a new nomenclature for SCC*mec* elements. Antimicrobial Agents Chemother 2006; 50:1001-1012.

Cirlan M, Saad M, Coman G, Bilal NE, Elbashier AM, Kreft D, Snijders S, Leeuwen WV and Belkum AV. International spread of major clones of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: nosocomial endemicity of multi locus sequence type 239 in Saudi Arabia and Romania. Inf Gen Evo 2005; 5:335-339.

Clinical and Laboratory Standard Institute. M100-S23 Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing: 23rd informational informational supplement 2013.

D'Souza N, Rodrigues C and Mehta A. Molecular characterisation of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* with emergence of epidemic clones of sequence type (ST) 22 and ST 772 in Mumbai, India. J Clin Microbiol 2010; 48:1806-1811.

Denis O, Deplano A, Nonhoff C, Hallin M, De Ryck R, Vanhoof R, De Mendonça R and Struelens MJ. In vitro activities of ceftobiprole, tigecycline, daptomycin and 19 other antimicrobials against methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains from a national survey of Belgian hospitals. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 2006; 50:2680-2685.

Deurenberg RH and Stobberingh EE. The evolution of *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Infect Gen Evo* 2008; 8:747-763.

Diep BA, Carleton HA, Chang RF, Sensabaugh GH and Perdreau-Remington F. Roles of 34 virulence genes in the evolution of hospital- and community-associated strains of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *J Infect Dis* 2006; 193:1495-1503.

Diep BA and Otto M. The role of virulence determinants in community-associated MRSA pathogenesis. *Trends Microbiol* 2008; 16:361-369.

Dulon M, Haamann F, Peters C, Schablon A and Nienhaus A. MRSA prevalence in European healthcare settings: a review. *BMC Infect Dis* 2011; 11:138 (doi: 10.1186/1471-2334-11-138).

Enright MC, Day NPJ, Davies CE, Peacock SJ and Spratt BG. Multilocus sequence typing for characterisation of methicillin resistant and methicillin susceptible clones of *Staphylococcus aureus*. *J Clin Microbiol* 2000; 38:1008-1015

Faria NA, Carrico JA, Oliveira DC, Mario R and De Lencastre H. Analysis of typing methods for epidemiological surveillance of both methicillin resistant and methicillin susceptible *Staphylococcus aureus* strains. *J Clin Microbiol* 2008; 46: 136-144.

Guzman CA, Guardati MC, Fenoglio D, Coratza G, Pruzzo C and Satta G. Novel immunoenzymatic assay for identification of coagulase and protein A-negative *Staphylococcus aureus* strains. *J Clin Microbiol* 1992; 30 1194-1197.

Harmsen D, Claus H, Witte W, Rothänger J, Claus H, Turnwarld D and Voguel U. Typing of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in a university hospital by using novel software for *spa* repeat determination and database management. *J Clin Microbiol* 2003; 41:5442-5448.

Harris SR, Feil EJ, Holden MTG, Quail MA, Nickerson EK, Chantratita N, Gardete S, Tavares A, Day N, Lindsay JA, Edgeworth JD, De Lencastre H, Julian P, Peacock SJ and Bentley SD. Evolution of MRSA during hospital transmission and intercontinental spread. *Science* 2010; 327:469-474.

Havaei SA, Moghadam SO, Pourmand MR and Faghri J. Prevalence of genes encoding bi-component leukocidins among clinical isolates of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Iranian J Publ Health* 2010; 39:8-14.

Holden MTG, Hsu LY, Kurt K, Weinert LA, Mather AE, Harris SR, Strommenger B, Layer F, Witte W, De Lencastre H, Skov R, Westh H, Žemlickova H, Coombs G, Kearns AM, Hill RLR, Edgeworth J, Gould I, Gant V, Cooke J, Edwards GF, McAdam PR, Templeton KE, McCann A, Zhou Z, Castillo-Ramírez S, Feil EJ, Hudson LO, Enright MC, Balloux F, Aanensen DM, Spratt BG, Fitzgerald JR, Parkhill J, Achtman M, Bentley SD and Nübel U. A genomic portrait of the emergence, evolution and global spread of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* pandemic. *Genome Res* 2013; (doi/10.1101/gr.147710.112).

Holmes A, Ganner M, McGuane S, Pitt TL, Cookson BD and Kearns AM. *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates carrying Panton-Valentine leucocidin genes in England and Wales: frequency, characterisation and association with clinical disease. *J Clin Microbiol* 2005; 43:2384-2390.

Hsu LY, Koh TH, Singh K, Kang ML, Kurup A and Tan BH. Dissemination of multisusceptible methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in Singapore. *J Clin Microbiol* 2005; 43:2923-2925.

Jansen van Rensburg MJ, Madikane VE, Whitelaw A, Chachage M, Haffejee S and Elisha BG. The dominant methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* clone from hospitals in Cape Town has an unusual genotype: ST612. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2011; 17:785-792.

Jarraud S, Mougél C, Thioulouse J, Lina G, Meugnier H, Forey F, Nesme X, Etienne J and Vandenesch F. Relationships between *Staphylococcus aureus*, genetic background, virulence factors, *agr* groups (alleles) and human disease. *Infect Immun* 2002; 70:631-641

Khane D, Leimkuhler C, Lu W and Walsh C. Glycopeptide and lipoglycopeptide antibiotics. *Chem Rev* 2005; 105:425-448.

Kim J. Understanding the evolution of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Clin Microbiol Newsletter* 2009; 31:17-23.

Larsen AR, Boucher S, Stegger M, Goering RV, Pallesen LV and Skov R. Epidemiology of European community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* clonal complex 80 type IV strains isolated in Denmark from 1993 to 2004. *J Clin Microbiol* 2008; 46:62-68.

Li M, An Diep B, Villaruz AE, Braughton KR, Jiang X, DeLeo FR, Chambers HF, Lu Y and Otto M. Evolution of virulence in epidemic community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; 106:5883-5888.

Lo WT and Wang CC. Panton-Valentine leukocidin in the pathogenesis of community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* infection. *Pediatr Neonatol* 2011; 52:59-65.

Makgotlho PE, Kock MM, Hoosen A, Lekalakala R, Omar S, Dove M and Ehlers MM. Molecular identification and genotyping of MRSA isolates. *FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol* 2009; 57:104-115.

Marchese A, Gualco L, Maioli E and Debbia E. Molecular analysis and susceptibility patterns of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) strains circulating in the community in the Ligurian area, a northern region of Italy: emergence of USA300 and EMRSA-15 clones. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2009; 34:424-428.

Maphanga TG. Genetic relatedness of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates from Steve Biko Hospital. MSc dissertation, University of Pretoria 2013.

McClure JA, Conly JM, Lau V, Elsayed S, Louie T, Hutchins W and Zhang K. Novel multiplex-PCR assay for detection of the staphylococcal virulence marker Panton-Valentine leukocidin genes and simultaneous discrimination of methicillin susceptible from resistant staphylococci. *J of Clin Microbiol* 2006; 44:1141-1144.

Mehndiratta P and Bhalla P. Typing of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*: A technical review. Indian J Med Microbiol 2012; 30: 16-23.

Monecke S, Coombs G, Shore AC, Coleman DC, Akpaka P, Borg M, Chow H, Ip M, Jatzwauk L, Jonas D, Kadlec K, Kearns A, Laurent F, O'Brien FG, Pearson J, Ruppelt A, Setfan S, Scicluna E, Slickers P, Tan HL, Weber S and Ehricht R. A field guide to pandemic, epidemic and sporadic clones of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. PLoS ONE 2011; 6:e17936 (doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0017936).

Moodley A, Oosthuysen WF, Duse AG, Marias E and the South African MRSA surveillance group. Molecular characterization of clinical methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates in South Africa. J Clin Microbiol 2010; 48:4608-4611.

Moussa IMI, Kabli SA, Hemeg HA, Al-Garni SM, Shibl AM. A novel multiplex-PCR for molecular characterisation of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* recovered from Jeddah, Kingdom of Saudi Arabia. Indian J Med Microbiol 2012; 30:296-301.

Nadiq S, Raju SR and Arakere G. Epidemic methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (EMRSA-15) variants detected in healthy and diseased individuals in India. J Med Microbiol 2010; 59:815-821.

Nastaly P, Grinhole M and Bielawski KP. Molecular characteristics of community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains for clinical medicine. Arch Microbiol 2010; 192:603-617.

Otto M. MRSA virulence and spread. Cell Microbiol 2012; 14:1513-1521.

Otter AJ and French LG. The emergence of community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* at London teaching hospital, 2000-2006. Clin Microbiol Infect 2008; 14:670-676.

Palavecino E. Clinical epidemiological and laboratory aspects of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) infections. Methods Mol Biol 2007; 391: 1-19.

Qiagen. Qiagen Sample and Assay Technologies. In: Qiagen HotStarTaq® PCR Handbook. 2nd ed. Germany, 2008. p 4-44.

Rasschaert G, Vanderhaeghen W, Dewaele I, Janez N, Huijsdens X, Butaye P and Heyndrick M. Comparison of fingerprinting methods for typing methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* sequence type 398. J Clin Microbiol 2009; 47:3313-3322.

Sakoulas G, Eliopoulos GM, Moellering RC Jr, Wennerstern C, Venkatarama L, Novick RP and Gold HS. Accessory gene regulator (*agr*) locus in geographically diverse *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates with reduced susceptibility to vancomycin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 2002; 46:1492-1502.

Salaam-Dreyer Z. Genotyping characterisation of *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates causing bacteraemia in patients admitted to Tygerberg Hospital, Western Cape Province, South Africa. UNScholar Research Repository MSc Thesis, Stellenbosch University 2010. Available online: <http://hdl.handle.net/10019.1/4095>. (Accessed: January 2013).

Schmitz FJ, Steiert M, Tichy HV, Hofmann B, Verhoef J, Heinz HP, Kohrer K and Jones ME. Typing of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates from Dusseldorf by six genotypic methods. J Med Microbiol 1998; 47:341-351.

Shittu A, Nubel U, Udo E, Lin J and Gaogakwe S. Characterisation of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates from hospitals in KwaZulu-Natal province, Republic of South Africa. J Med Microbiol 2009; 58:1219-1226.

Shopsin B, Mathema B, Alcabes P, Said-Salim B, Lina G, Matsuka A, Martinez J and Kreiswirth BN. Prevalence of *agr* specificity groups among *Staphylococcus aureus* strains colonising children and their guardians. J Clin Microbiol 2003; 41:456-459.

Skrupky PL, Micek TS and Kollef HM. Bench-to-beside review: Understanding the impact of resistance and virulence factors on methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* infections in the intensive care unit. Crit Care 2009; 13:222 (doi: 10.1186/cc8028).

Stefani S, Chung DR, Lindsay JA, Friedrich AW, Kearns AM, Westh H and MacKenzie FM. Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA): Global epidemiology and harmonisation of typing methods. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2012; 39:273-282.

Tenover FC and Goering RV. Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strain USA300: origin and epidemiology. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2009; 64:441-446.

Tiwari KB. Vancomycin resistance in *Staphylococcus aureus* may occur faster than expected. *Inter J Life Sci* 2009; 3:6-13.

Trindade PA, McCulloch JA, Oliveira GA and Mamizuka EM. Molecular techniques for MRSA typing: Current issues and perspectives. *Braz J Infect Dis* 2003; 7:32-43.

Tristan A, Ferry T and Durand G. Virulence determinants in community and hospital methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *J Hosp Infect* 2007; 65:105-109.

Turlej A, Hryniewicz W and Empel J. Staphylococcal cassette chromosome *mec* (SCC*mec*) classification and typing methods: an overview. *Pol J Microbiol* 2011; 60:95-103.

Van Leeuwen W, Van Nieuwenhuizen W, Gijzen C, Verbrugh H and Van Belkum A. Population studies of methicillin resistant and sensitive *Staphylococcus aureus* strains reveal a lack of variability in the *agr* D gene, encoding a staphylococcal autoinducer peptide. *J of bacterial* 2000; 182:5721-5729.

Vaino A, Koskela S, Virolainen A, Vuopio J and Salmenlinna S. Adapting *spa* typing for national laboratory-based surveillance of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 2011; 30:789-797.

Wang R, Braughton KR, Kretschmer D, Bach T-HL, Queck SY, Li M, Kennedy AD, Dorward DW, Klebanoff SJ, Peschel A, DeLeo FR and Otto M. Identification of novel cytolytic peptides as key virulence determinants for community-associated MRSA. *Nature Med* 2007; 13:1510-1514.

Weber JD. Community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. Clin Infect Dis 2005; 41: 269-272.

Witte W, Cuny C, Klare I, Nübel U, Strommenger B and Werner G. Emergence and spread of antibiotic-resistant Gram-positive bacterial pathogens. Int J Med Microbiol 2008; 298:365-377.

Wright JS III, Traber KE, Corrigan R, Benson SA, Musser JM, Novick RP. The *agr* radiation : an early event in the evolution of staphylococci. J Bacteriol 2005; 187:5585-559.

Table 3.1: Oligonucleotide sequences of the primers used in the M-PCR assay for the detection of the 16S rRNA, *mecA* and PVL genes of the MRSA isolates (McClure *et al.*, 2006)

Primer	Oligonucleotide Sequence (5'- 3')	Target gene	Amplicon Size (bp)	Conc (µM)
Staph 756F Staph 756R	-AACTCTGTTATTAGGGAAGAACA- -CCACCTTCCTCCGTTTGTACC-	16S rRNA	756	0.2
MecA1-F MecA2-R	-GTAGAAATGACTGAACGTCCGATAA- -CCAATTCCACATTGTTTCGGTCTAA-	<i>mecA</i>	310	0.2
Luk-PV-1F Luk-PV-2R	-ATCATTAGGTAAAATGTCTGGACATGATCCA- -GCATCAAGTGTATTGGATAGCAAAAAGC-	<i>lukS/F-PV</i>	433	0.2

Table 3.2: Oligonucleotide sequences of primers used for the *spa* typing of MRSA isolates (Schmitz *et al.*, 1998)

Primer	Oligonucleotide sequence 5'- 3'	Concentration	Position
SPA 1	-GATTTTAGTATTGCAATACATAATTTCG-	0.4 µM	114-140
SPA 2	-CCACCAAATACAGTTGTACCG-	0.4 µM	1702-1682
SPA 3	-CTTTGGATGAAGCCGTTGCGTTG-	0.4 µM	1088-1066

Table 3.3: Oligonucleotide sequences of primers used for the *spa* sequencing of MRSA isolates (Larsen *et al.*, 2008)

Primer	Oligonucleotide sequence 5'- 3'	Concentration
1095F	-AGACGATCCTTCGGTGAGC-	0.25 µM
1517R	-GCTTTTGCAATGTCATTTACTG-	0.25 µM

Table 3.4: Oligonucleotide sequences of primers used for the *agr* typing of MRSA isolates (Shopsin *et al.*, 2003)

Primer	Oligonucleotide sequence 5'-3'	Target gene	Amplicon size (bp)	Conc (µM)
Pan- <i>agrB</i> (F)	-ATGCACATGGTGACATGC-	<i>agrB</i>	-	0.2
<i>agr I</i> (R)	-GTCACAAGTACTATAAGCTGCGAT-	<i>agrD</i>	440	0.2
<i>agr II</i> (R)	-GTATTACTAATTGAAAAGTGCCATAGC-	<i>agrC</i>	572	0.2
<i>agr III</i> (R)	-CTGTTGAAAAAGTCAACTAAAAGCTC-	<i>agrD</i>	406	0.2
<i>agr IV</i> (R)	-CGATAATGCCGTAATACCCG-	<i>agrC</i>	588	0.2

Table 3.5: Oligonucleotide sequences of primers used for the MLST typing of selected MRSA isolates (Enright *et al.*, 2000)

Primer	Oligonucleotide Sequence 5'-3'	Target gene	Amplicon Size (bp)	Conc (µM)
<i>arcC</i> -fd <i>arcC</i> -Rv	-TTGATTCACCAGCGCGTATTGTC- -AGGTATCTGCTTCAATCAGCG-	Carbamate kinase (<i>arcC</i>)	500	0.5
<i>aroE</i> -fd <i>aroE</i> -Rv	-ATCGGAAATCCTATTTACATTC- -GGTGTGTATTAATAACGATATC-	Shikimate dehydrogenase (<i>aroE</i>)	500	0.5
<i>glpF</i> -fd <i>glpF</i> -Rv	-TGGTAAAATCGCATGTCCAATTC- -CTAGGAACTGCAATCTTAATCC-	Glycerol kinase (<i>glpF</i>)	500	0.5
<i>gmk</i> -fd <i>gmk</i> -Rv	-ATCGTTTTATCGGGACCATC- -TCATTAAC TACAACGTAATCGTA-	Guanylate kinase (<i>gmk</i>)	500	0.5
<i>pta</i> -fd <i>pta</i> -Rv	-GTTAAAATCGTATTACCTGAAGG- -GACCCTTTTGTGAAAAGCTTAA-	Phosphate acetyltransferase (<i>pta</i>)	500	0.5
<i>tpi</i> -fd <i>tpi</i> -Rv	-TCGTTCAATTCTGAACGTCGTGAA- -TTTGCACCTTCTAACAATTGTAC-	Triosephosphate isomerase (<i>tpi</i>)	500	0.5
<i>yqiL</i> -fd <i>yqiL</i> -Rv	-CAGCATACAGGACACCTATTGGC- -CGTTGAGGAATCGATACTGGAAC-	Acetyl coenzyme A acetyltransferase (<i>yqiL</i>)	500	0.5

Table 3.6: Ridom sequence *spa* types, sequence types and geographical distribution of *spa* types identified in this study (<http://spaserver.ridom.de>)

<i>Spa</i> types	Geographical Distribution	Ridom sequence of <i>spa</i> types	Sequence type
t012	Australia, Belgium, Canada, Cyprus, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Iceland, Italy, Jordan, Latvia, Lebanon, Netherlands, New York, Norway, Poland, SA, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, UK and USA	15-12-16-02-16-02-25-17-24-24	ST36
t037	Australia, Belgium, Bulgara, Canada, China, Croatia, Denmark, France, Germany, Iceland, Italy, Jordan, Latvia, Lebanon, Malaysia, Netherlands, New York, Norway, Poland, SA, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, Taiwan and UK	15-12-16-02-25-17-24	ST239
t891	Denmark, Finland, Germany, Norway, SA, Sweden and Switzerland	26-23-13-23-31-05-17-25-17-25-28	ST22
t1257	Denmark, Germany, Norway and SA	11-19-34-05-17-34-24-34-22-25	ST612

Table 3.7: Distribution of the *agr* groups among the *spa* clusters identified from the dendrogramme

<i>agr</i> groups	<i>spa</i> CLUSTERS												OUTLIERS FROM <i>spa</i> DENDOGRAMME	UNTYPEABLE BY <i>spa</i> TYPING
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L		
<i>agr</i> I 84.4% (163/193)	24.0% (39/163)	22.1% (36/163)	3.1% (5/163)	10.4% (17/163)	13.4% (22/163)	1.8% (3/163)	9.8% (16/163)	4/163, (2.4%)	-	-	4.9% (8/163)	2.5% (4/163)	2.5% (4/163)	3.1% (5/163)
<i>agr</i> II 4.7% (9/193)	11.1% (1/9)	44.4% (4/9)	-	-	11.1% (1/9)	-	-	-	-	-	11.1% (1/9)	11.1% (1/9)	-	11.1% (1/9)
<i>agr</i> III 7.3% (14/193)	21.0% (3/14)	29.0% (4/14)	7.0% (1/14)	-	-	-	-	-	7.0% (1/14)	29.0% (4/14)	7.0% (1/14)	-	-	-
<i>agr</i> I and III 3.6% (7/193)	14.3% (1/7)	-	-	14.3% (1/7)	28.5% (2/7)	-	-	-	28.5% (2/7)	14.3% (1/7)	-	-	-	-
<i>agr</i> IV	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Table 3.8: Vitek2 automated system (bioMérieux, Mary l'Etoile, France) antimicrobial susceptibility testing (AST) for the ten representative isolates for *spa* sequencing and MLST typing

	ISOLATE NUMBER	VITEK2 AUTOMATED SYSTEM (bioMérieux, Mary l'Etoile, France) RESULT	RESISTANT (R) ANTIBIOTICS ($\mu\text{g/ml}$)	SUSCEPTIBLE (S) ANTIBIOTICS ($\mu\text{g/ml}$)	INTERMEDIATE (I) ANTIBIOTICS ($\mu\text{g/ml}$)
1	2	MRSA	Clindamycin (≥ 8), Erythromycin (≥ 8), Fusidic Acid (≥ 32), Oxacillin (≥ 4), Rifampicin (≥ 32), Teicoplanin (≥ 32), Tetracycline (8) and Vancomycin (≥ 32)	Ciprofloxacin (≤ 0.5), Gentamicin (≤ 0.5), Moxifloxacin (≤ 0.25), Tigecycline (0.5) and Trimethoprim-Sulfamethoxazole (\leq 10)	
2	71	MRSA	Clindamycin (≥ 8), Erythromycin (≥ 8), Fusidic Acid (≥ 32), Gentamicin (≥ 16), Rifampicin (≥ 32), Teicoplanin (≥ 32), Tetracycline (≥ 16), Trimethoprim- Sulfamethoxazole (≥ 320), Oxacillin (≥ 4) and Vancomycin (≥ 32)	Ciprofloxacin (≤ 0.5), Moxifloxacin (\leq 0.25) and Tigecycline (0.5)	
3	100	MRSA	Ciprofloxacin (≥ 8), Clindamycin (≤ 0.25), Erythromycin (≥ 8), Gentamicin (≥ 16), Tetracycline (≥ 16), Trimethoprim- Sulfamethoxazole (≥ 320), Oxacillin (≥ 4) and Rifampicin (≥ 32)	Fusidic Acid (≤ 0.5), Linezolid (1), Moxifloxacin (1), Mupirocin (≤ 2), Teicoplanin (≤ 0.5), Tigecycline (≤ 0.12) and Vancomycin (1)	
4	125	MRSA	Ciprofloxacin (≥ 8), Clindamycin (≤ 0.25), Erythromycin (≥ 8), Gentamicin (≥ 16), Moxifloxacin (≥ 8), Tetracycline (≥ 16), Trimethoprim-Sulfamethoxazole (≥ 320), Oxacillin (≥ 4) and Rifampicin (≥ 32),	Linezolid (2), Mupirocin (≤ 2), Teicoplanin (2), Tigecycline (0.5) and vancomycin (2.0)	Fusidic Acid (4)
5	131	MRSA	Ciprofloxacin (≥ 8), Clindamycin (≤ 0.25), Erythromycin (≥ 8), Gentamicin (≥ 16), Moxifloxacin (2), Oxacillin (≥ 4), Tetracycline (≥ 16) and Trimethoprim- Sulfamethoxazole (≥ 320)	Fusidic Acid (≤ 0.25), Linezolid (2), Rifampicin (≤ 0.5), Teicoplanin (≤ 0.5), Tigecycline (0.25) and Vancomycin (2)	

Table 3.8: Vitek2 automated system (bioMérieux, Mary l'Etoile, France) antimicrobial susceptibility testing (AST) for the ten representative isolates for *spa* sequencing and MLST typing (continued)

	ISOLATE NUMBER	VITEK2 AUTOMATED SYSTEM (bioMérieux, Mary l'Etoile, France) RESULT	RESISTANT (R) ANTIBIOTICS (µg/ml)	SUSCEPTIBLE (S) ANTIBIOTICS (µg/ml)	INTERMEDIATE (I) ANTIBIOTICS (µg/ml)
6	133	MRSA	Ciprofloxacin (≥ 8), Clindamycin (≤ 0.25), Erythromycin (≥ 8), Gentamicin (≥ 16), Oxacillin (≥ 4), Tetracycline (≥ 16) and Trimethoprim-Sulfamethoxazole (≥ 320)	Fusidic Acid (≤ 0.5), Linezolid (2), Moxifloxacin (1), Rifampicin (≤ 0.5), Teicoplanin (≤ 0.5), Tigecycline (0.25) and Vancomycin (≤ 0.5)	
7	134	MRSA	Clindamycin (≤ 0.25), Erythromycin (≥ 8), Gentamicin (≥ 16), Oxacillin (≥ 4), Tetracycline (≥ 4) and Trimethoprim-Sulfamethoxazole (80)	Ciprofloxacin (≤ 0.5), Fusidic Acid (≤ 0.5), Linezolid (1), Moxifloxacin (≤ 0.25), Mupirocin (≤ 2), Teicoplanin (2), Tigecycline (0.25) and Vancomycin (2)	
8	143	MRSA	Ciprofloxacin (≥ 8), Clindamycin (≤ 0.25), Erythromycin (≥ 8), Gentamicin (≥ 16), Oxacillin (≥ 4), Rifampicin (≥ 32), Tetracycline (≥ 16) and Trimethoprim-Sulfamethoxazole (≥ 320)	Fusidic Acid (≤ 0.5), Linezolid (2), Moxifloxacin (≤ 2), Mupirocin (≤ 2), Teicoplanin (≤ 0.5), Tigecycline (≤ 0.12) and Vancomycin (≤ 0.5)	
9	165	MRSA	Clindamycin (≤ 0.25), Erythromycin (≥ 8), Gentamicin (≥ 16), Oxacillin (≥ 4), Rifampicin (≥ 32), Tetracycline (2) and Trimethoprim-Sulfamethoxazole (160)	Linezolid (1), Moxifloxacin (0.5), Teicoplanin (8), Tigecycline (≤ 0.12) and Vancomycin (2)	Ciprofloxacin (2) and Fusidic Acid (4)
10	183	MRSA	Ciprofloxacin (≥ 8), Clindamycin (≥ 8), Erythromycin (≥ 8), Moxifloxacin (≥ 8) and Oxacillin (≥ 8)	Fusidic Acid (≤ 0.25), Gentamicin (≤ 0.5), Linezolid (≥ 8), Tetracycline (≤ 1), Teicoplanin (2), Tigecycline (≤ 0.5), Rifampicin (≤ 0.5) and Vancomycin (≤ 0.05)	

Table 3.9: Results of the ten representative isolates for MLST typing showing the presence of the PVL gene, PFGE pulsotypes, *spa* cluster and subcluster, *spa* types, *agr* groups, sequence types (ST), allelic profiles, clonal complexes (CCs) and the distribution of the sequence types identified worldwide

ISOLATE NUMBER	PVL	<i>spa</i> CLUSTER	<i>spa</i> SUBCLUSTER	<i>spa</i> sequencing types	<i>agr</i> GROUP	PFGE	MLST typing			WORLDWIDE DISTRIBUTION
							ST	Allelic Profile	CC	
2	Neg	A	A1	NA	I	E	NA	3-3-1-1-4-88-?		NA
71	Pos	D	D1	891	I	A3	22	7-6-1-5-8-8-6	22	Europe, Indonesia, SA and Canada
100	Neg	A	A5	1257	I	A6	612	3-3-1-1-4-88-83	8	SA and Australia
125	Neg	NT	NT	037	I	NT	NT	2-3-1-1-4-240-3	NT	NA
131	Neg	B	B4	037	III	A	239	2-3-1-1-4-4-3	8	Asia, Australia, SA, South America and Europe
133	Neg	B	B1	037	I	A	239	2-3-1-1-4-4-3	8	Asia, Australia, SA, South America and Europe
134	Neg	NT	NT	NA	I	B2	NT	?-?-1-1-?-4-83-	NT	NA
143	Neg	A	A1	1257	III	B	612	3-3-1-1-4-88-83	8	SA and Australia
165	Neg	NT	NT	NA	I	I	NT	?-3-1-1-?-4-3	NT	NA
183	Neg	I	I	012	I, III	J	36	2-2-2-2-3-3-2	30	USA, UK, Australia, Canada and SA

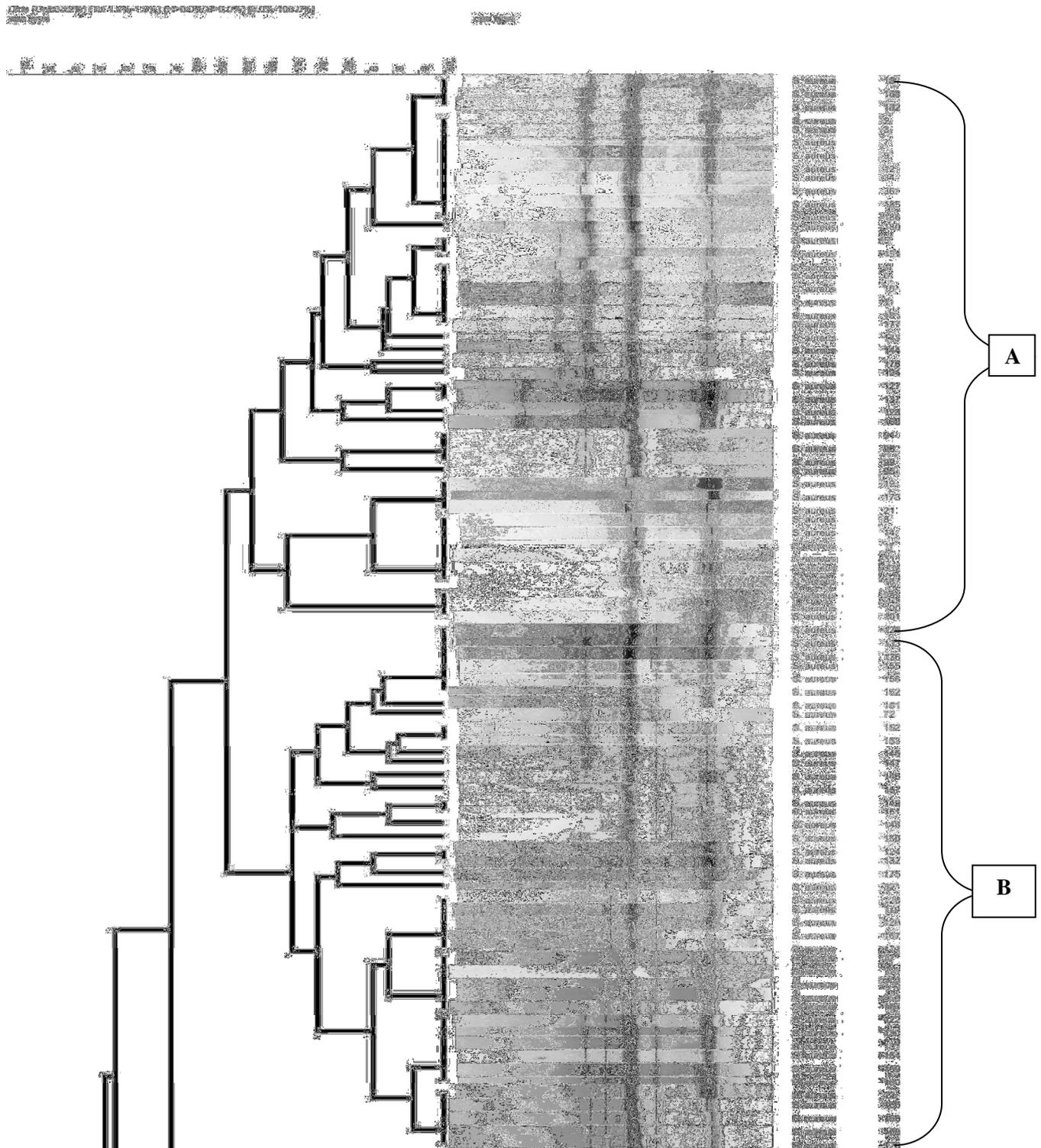


Figure 3.1: Dendrogramme obtained for *spa* typing, depicting clonal relatedness of the 187 typeable (Clusters A to L) MRSA clinical isolates obtained from the Steve Biko Academic Hospital, Gauteng, South Africa

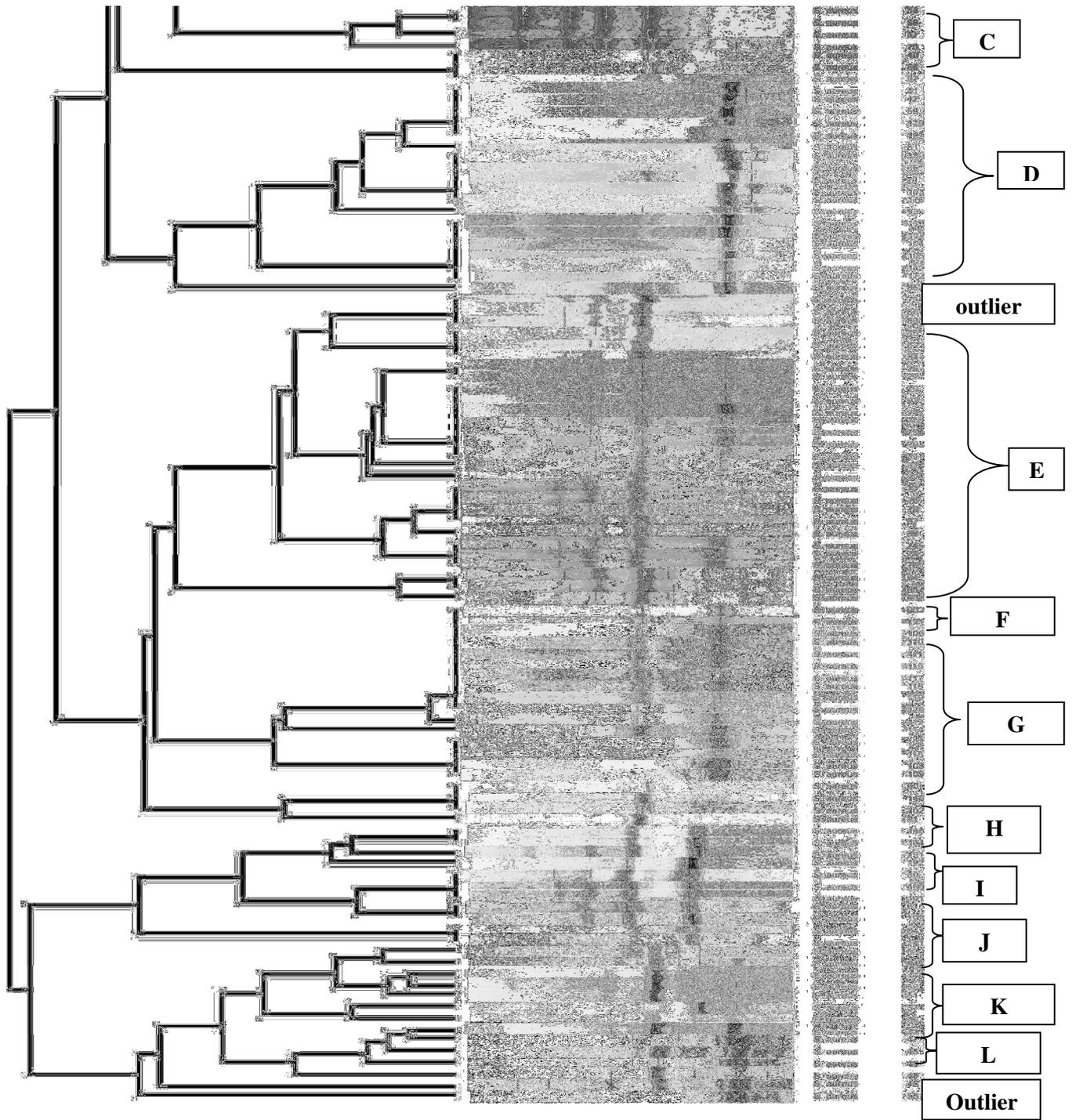


Figure 3.1: Dendrogramme obtained for *spa* typing, depicting genetic diversity of the 187 typeable (Clusters A to L) clinical MRSA isolates obtained from Steve Biko Academic Hospital, Gauteng, South Africa (continued)

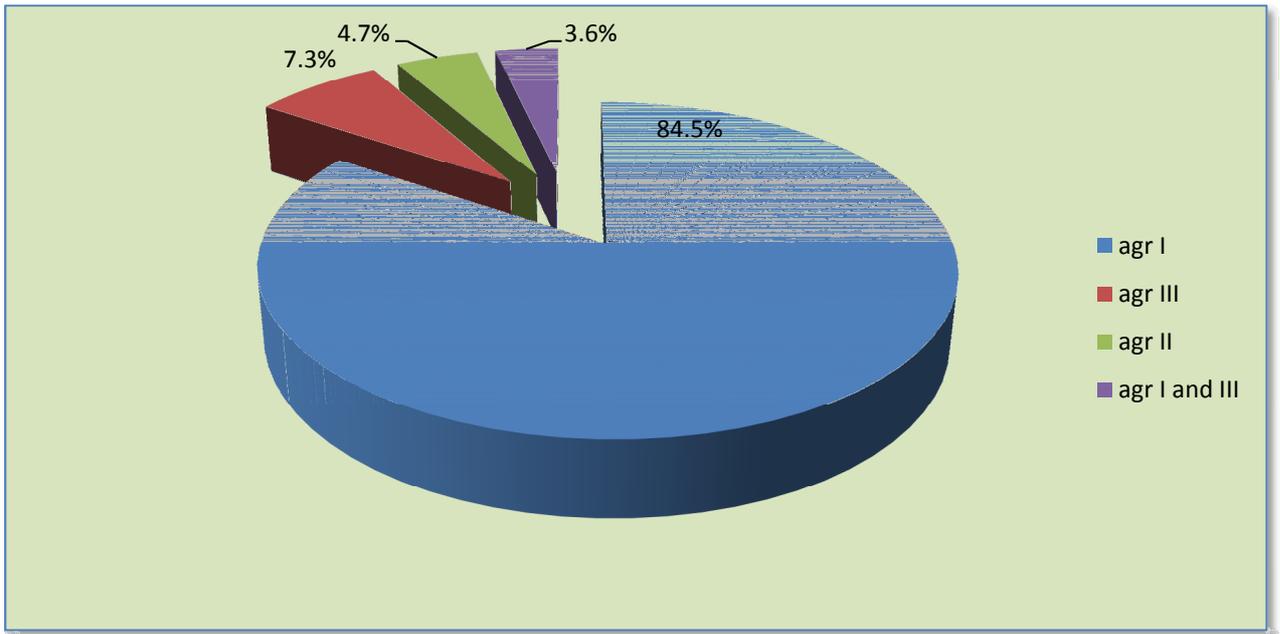


Figure 3.2: Pie chart representing the *agr* groups detected in 193 clinical MRSA isolates analysed

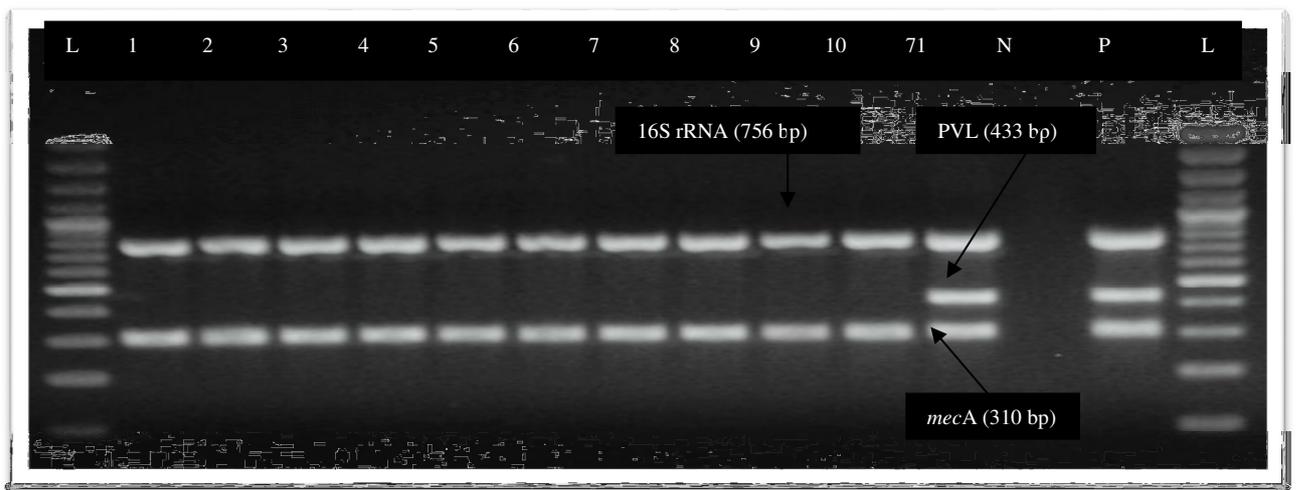


Figure 3.3: Gel electrophoresis of the M-PCR assay for the detection of the 16S rRNA, *mecA* and PVL genes of the MRSA isolates. Lanes 1 to 10 show the 16S rRNA (756 bp) and *mecA* (310 bp). Lane 71 shows the 16S rRNA (756 bp), *mecA* (310 bp) and PVL (433 bp) genes. N= negative control, P= positive control and L = 100 bp ladder

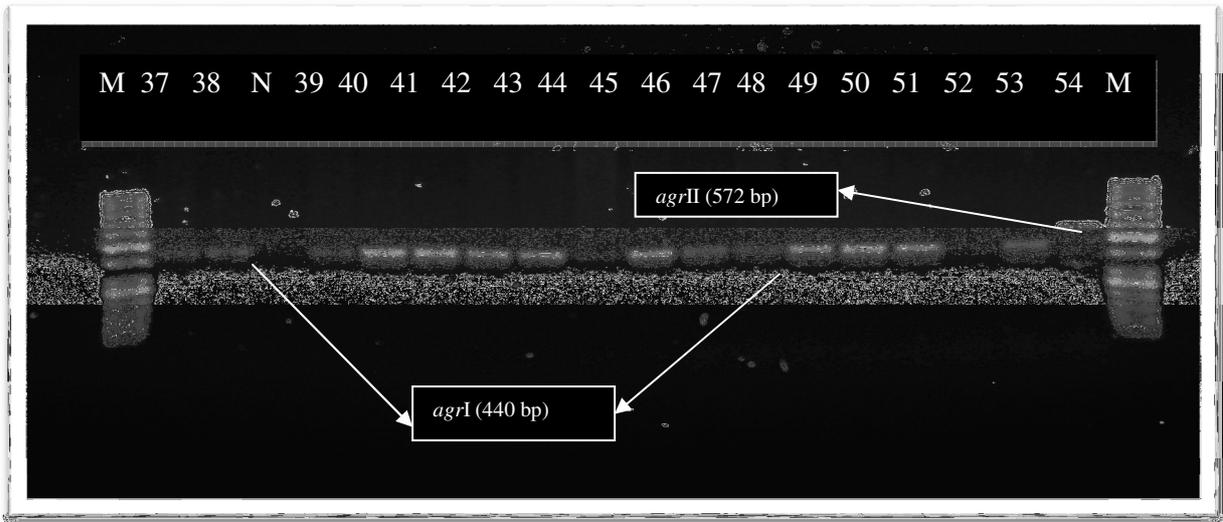


Figure 3.4: Gel electrophoresis results of the duplex PCR assay for the detection of *agr* groups I and II. Isolates 37 to 53 belonged to *agr* group I (440 bp *agr* group I gene), while isolate 54 belonged to *agr* group II (570 bp *agr* group II gene). N= Negative control, M= 50 bp molecular marker (Thermo Scientific, USA)

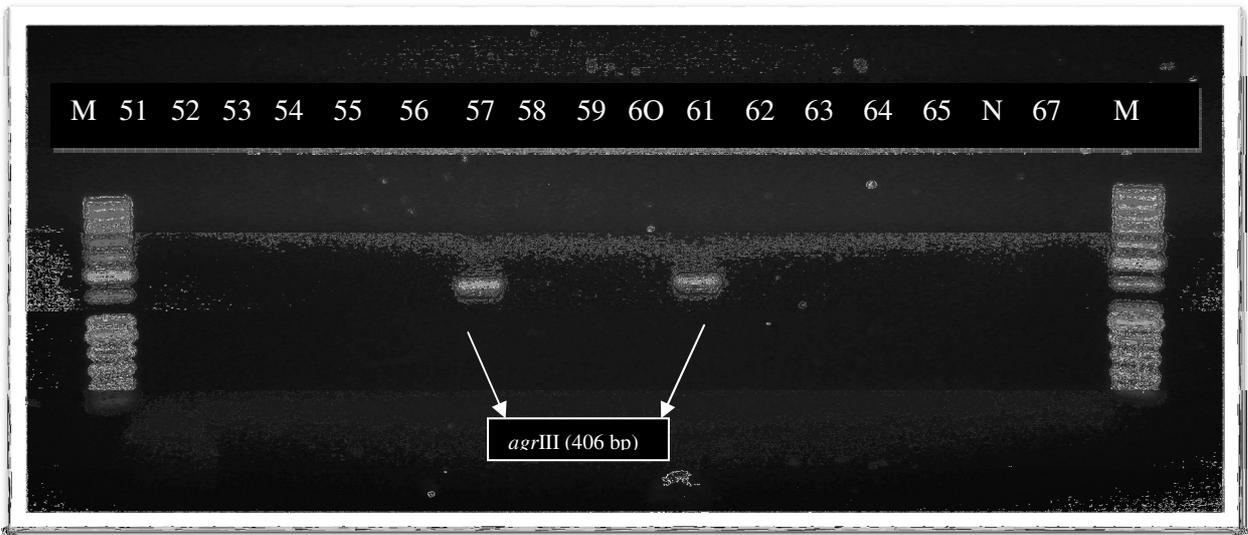


Figure 3.5: Gel electrophoresis results of duplex PCR assay for the detection of *agr* groups III and IV. Isolates 56 and 61 belonged to *agr* group III (406 bp *agr* group III gene). None of the isolates harboured the *agr* group IV. N =Negative control, M = 50 bp molecular marker (Thermo Scientific, USA)

CHAPTER 4

CONCLUSIONS

4.1 Concluding remarks

Globally, methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) is considered to be the main cause of healthcare and community-associated MRSA infections (Köck *et al.*, 2010). The bacterium is important due to the heavy burden of disease it causes, its evolution and the global spread of multi-drug resistant clones (Cookson *et al.*, 2007). Methicillin resistant *S. aureus* was first discovered in hospitals and considered as a hospital pathogen (Stefani *et al.*, 2012). The discovery of MRSA in the community (CA-MRSA) and livestock (LA-MRSA) without healthcare-associated risk factors means MRSA infections are not exclusively confined to the healthcare system (Stefani *et al.*, 2012).

Most clinical laboratories make use of different phenotypic tests for the detection of methicillin resistance in staphylococci (John *et al.*, 2009). However, the results from phenotypic tests may take 1 to 5 days to be reported, with obvious consequences for identifying MRSA carriage and infection control (Harbarth *et al.*, 2011). This could allow colonised patients up to five days to transmit infection to other patients before they are placed in isolation (Harbarth *et al.*, 2011). Molecular techniques have the advantage of a quicker turn-around time, infections can be diagnosed rapidly and patients treated accordingly (Strommenger *et al.*, 2008). Presently, there are different molecular genotyping techniques, which can be used to identify MRSA strains in the laboratories (Strommenger *et al.*, 2008). Rapid and easy molecular genotyping techniques are those based on PCR methods (Malachowa *et al.*, 2005). Though these molecular genotyping techniques are not routinely done due to the high cost involved, genotyping methods are important in cases of outbreaks to identify the specific clones.

Three different PCR-based assay namely staphylococcal protein A (*spa*) typing, accessory gene regulator (*agr*) typing and multilocus sequence typing (MLST) were utilized in this study, to detect, identify and characterise 194 MRSA clinical isolates. Pulsed-field gel electrophoresis and *SCCmec* typing were used in a previous study to determine the clonal relatedness of these same clinical MRSA isolates. The *spa* typing assay used in the current

study was easy, less tedious and showed a high discriminatory power compared to the PFGE technique. Although the PFGE typing technique was able to determine the clonal relatedness of the MRSA strains with only two isolates being untypeable (Isolates 125 and 170), the method was found to be technically demanding and labour-intensive as previously reported by Chung *et al.* (2012).

In the current study, all isolates were typeable with *agr* typing with the exception of one isolate, which was contaminated. Accessory gene regulator groups I, II and III were identified in this study. No *agr* group IV, which is common among exfoliatin producing strains was identified in this study. Different studies have reported that the absence of *agr* group IV (associated with staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome) suggest the fact that competition does not favour this MRSA strain (Shopsin *et al.*, 2003).

Groupings based on multilocus sequence typing (MLST) and *spa* sequencing is the current terminology used to describe the lineages of MRSA (Stefani *et al.*, 2012). The MLST typing and *spa* sequencing methods used for ten representative isolates in this study identified clones of MRSA, t037-ST239/CC8, t1257-ST612/CC8, t891-ST22/CC22, t012-ST36/CC30 which have been reported worldwide and in South Africa (Jansen van Rensburg *et al.*, 2011; Moodley *et al.*, 2010). The *tpi* gene for isolate 125 had a unique allele number (240) (2-3-1-1-4-240-3), which makes it a new allelic profile with a new ST yet to be identified on the MLST database (<http://saureus.mlst.net/sql/multiplelocus.asp>), though the allelic profile of the other six housekeeping genes (*arc*, *aroE*, *glpF*, *gmk*, *pta* and *yqiL*) (2-3-1-1-4-?-3) for this isolate was similar to that of ST239 (2-3-1-1-4-4-3). The allelic number for the *yqiL* gene of isolate 2 was not found on the MLST database (<http://saureus.mlst.net/sql/multiplelocus.asp>), (3-3-1-1-4-88-?). The allele numbers for the *arc*, *aroE* and *pta* gene for isolates (134 and 165) were not found on the MLST database. These allele numbers could be new emerging MRSA strains and need to be further investigated using whole genome sequencing.

Different studies have reported sequence types, ST22/CC22, ST36/CC30 and ST239/CC8 as the major HA-MRSA clones found worldwide (Deurenberg and Stobberingh 2008; Otter and French, 2008). The successful dissemination of these clones worldwide and in South Africa has been reported to be due to historic emigration and the tourism between different countries (Jansen van Rensburg *et al.*, 2011). The only PVL positive isolate in this study was

identified as t891-ST22/CC22. Sequence type ST612, a member of CC8 has only been described previously in South Africa and Australia (Jansen van Rensburg *et al.*, 2011).

In this study, the MLST typing assay identified the sequence types of six out of the ten isolates, while *spa* sequencing identified the *spa* types of eight of the ten isolates. Staphylococcal protein A sequencing was more rapid than the MLST typing assay. This is because only one gene is targeted with *spa* sequencing whereas seven genes are targeted with MLST typing, which also makes this typing technique more expensive. Nevertheless, the three PCR based techniques used in this study [i.e *spa* typing (PCR assay and sequencing), *agr* typing and MLST typing] were rapid and less labour intensive as compared to PFGE typing. Although, MLST typing is more expensive, this typing technique allowed the identification of the sequence types circulating in this clinical setting. However, the typing of all isolates in the routine diagnostic laboratory is not feasible due to common financial restrictions. It is suggested, that where possible, clinical MRSA isolates be typed on a regular basis for large clinical settings to determine which MRSA strains are currently circulating. This will enable infection control personnel and clinicians to monitor any changes in the genetic diversity of circulating strains. In this study, *spa* typing seemed to be a suitable method in terms of cost, speed, ease of use, interpretation and standardisation as well as a complementary tool, which provided additional epidemiological value to PFGE typing (Moodley *et al.*, 2006).

4.2 Future research

The main burden of MRSA disease in South Africa continues to grow with the occurrence of identical MRSA strains across different provinces, which shows the interhospital spread and clonal nature of MRSA. Future research should be directed towards (i) detection of MRSA isolates, (ii) effective coordination of healthcare workers regarding infection control measures, (iii) immediate isolation and proper care of infected patients, (iv) the correct use of antimicrobial agents (antibiotic stewardship) and (v) the continuous surveillance of antimicrobial resistance patterns are all important for preventing the spread of MRSA (Gould *et al.*, 2010).

Further investigation on the genes and mechanisms of antimicrobial resistance of *S. aureus* is essential. This may give further insight into the pathogenesis of MRSA and current treatment

regimens can be modified accordingly to circumvent mechanisms of drug resistance. It is important to discriminate between methicillin sensitive *S. aureus* (MSSA) and MRSA for appropriate therapy and timely intervention of cross infection control (Bernardo *et al.*, 2002). The matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry (MALDI-TOF MS) has proven to be a rapid and effective technique for the rapid and simple discrimination of clonal strains of MRSA (Bernardo *et al.*, 2002). The MALDI-TOF MS might be useful for tracking epidemic outbreaks of both HA-MRSA and CA-MRSA (Bernardo *et al.*, 2002). New molecular methods, such as plasmid profiling techniques are being developed, which are expected to contribute immensely to genotyping techniques in the near future (Stefani *et al.*, 2012). The microarray-based analysis of 3 000 MRSA isolates from different parts of the world has shown potential for: (i) assigning isolates to lineages and (ii) allow for the analysis of the presence or absence of virulence and resistance genes, which are encoded on mobile genetic elements (MGEs) (Monecke *et al.*, 2011). The development of low-cost, high-throughput, bench top bacterial genome sequencing will facilitate diagnosis, resistance profiles and epidemiological typing within hours (Gray *et al.*, 2011). Whole-genome sequencing provides the necessary insights into the structure of the *S. aureus* genome and genetic predictors of virulence, compared to the conventional molecular methods such as *spa*, PFGE and MLST (Diep, 2012; Chua *et al.*, 2013).

Staphylococci remain important nosocomial pathogens (Chua *et al.*, 2013). Continued future research on *Staphylococcus* genetics is, therefore, required to: (i) obtain a better understanding of bacterial evolution and (ii) to obtain insights into the various interactions between the host and the pathogen.

REFERENCES

- Bernardo K, Pakulat N, Macht M, Krut O, Seifert H, Fleers S, Hüniger F and Krönke M (2002). Identification and discrimination of *Staphylococcus aureus* strains using matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry. *Proteomics* **2**: 747-753
- Chua KYL, Stinear TP and Howden BP (2013) Functional genomics of *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Briefings in Functional Genomics* **4**: 305-315
- Chung S, Yi L, Jang MH, Si Joo, Ra EK, Kim YS, Chang CL, Park SS and Kim CE (2012) Comparison of modified multiple-locus variable number tandem-repeat fingerprinting with pulsed-field gel electrophoresis for typing clinical isolates of *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Annals of Laboratory Medicine* **32**: 50-56
- Cookson BD, Robinson DA, Monk AB, Murchan S, Depleno A, de Ryck R, Struelens MJ, Scheel C, Fussing V, Salmenlinna S, Vuopio-Varkila J, Cuny C, Witte W, Tassios PT, Legakis NJ, Leeuwen WV, Belkum AV, Vindel A, Garaizar J, Haeggman S, Olsson-Liljequist B, Ransjö U, Müller-Premru M, Hryniewicz W, Rossney A, O'Connell B, Short BD, Jonathan T, O'Hanlon S and Enright MC (2007) Evaluation of molecular typing methods in characterising a European collection of epidemic methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* strains: the HARMONY collection. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **45**:1830-1837
- Deurenberg RH and Stobberingh EE (2008) The evolution of *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Infection Genetics and Evolution* **8**:747-763
- Diep B (2012) Use of whole-genome sequencing for outbreak investigations. *Lancet Infectious Diseases* **2**: 99-101
- Gould IM, Reilly J, Bunyan D and Walker A (2010) Costs of healthcare-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and its control. *Clinical Microbiology and Infection* **16**: 1721-1728

Gray RR, Tatem AJ, Johnson JA, Alekseyenko AV, Pybus OG, Suchard MA and Salemi M (2011) Testing spatiotemporal hypothesis of bacterial evolution using methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* ST239 genome-wide data within a bayesian framework. *Molecular Biology and Evolution* **2**:1593-1603

Harbarth S, Hawkey PM, Tenover F, Stefani S, Pantosi A and Struelens MJ (2011) Update on screening and clinical diagnosis of methicillin resistant *staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA). *International Journal of Antimicrobial Agents* **37**:110-117

Jansen van Rensburg MJ, Madikane VE, Whitelaw A, Chachage M, Haffejee S and Elisha BG (2011). The dominant methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* clone from hospitals in Cape Town has an unusual genotype: ST612. *Clinical Microbiology and Infection* **17**:785-792

John MA, Burden J, Stuart JI, Reyers RC, Lannigan R, Milburn S, Diagre D, Wilson B and Hussain Z (2009) Comparison of three phenotypic techniques for the detection of methicillin resistance in *Staphylococcus* spp. reveal a species dependent performance. *Journal of Antimicrobial Chemotherapy* **63**: 493-496

Köck R, Becker K, Cookson B, Gemert-Pijnen JE, Harbarth S, Kluytmans J, Mielke M, Peters G, Skov RL, Struelens MJ, Tacconelli E, Torne AN, Witte W and Friedrich AW (2010) Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA): Burden of disease and control challenges in Europe. *Eurosurveillance* **15**: 19688

Malachowa N, Sabat A, Gniadkowski M, Krzyszton-Russjan J, Empel J, Miedzobrodzki J, Kosowska-Shick, Appelbaum PC and Hryniewicz W (2005) Comparison of multiple-locus variable-number tandem-repeat analysis with pulsed-field gel electrophoresis, *spa* typing and multilocus sequence typing for clonal characterisation of *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **43**: 3095-3100

Monecke S, Coombs G, Shore AC, Coleman DC, Akpaka P, Borg M, Chow H, Ip M, Jatzwauk L, Jonas D, Kadlec K, Kearns A, Laurent F, O'Brien FG, Pearson J, Ruppelt A, Schwarz S, Scicluna E, Slickers P, Tan HL, Weber S and Enhrich R (2011). A field guide to

pandemic, epidemic and sporadic clones of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *PLoS ONE* **6**: e17936

Moodley A, Stegger M, Bagcigil AF, Baptiste KE, Loeffler A, Lioyd DH, Williams NJ, Leonard N, Abbott Y, Skov R and Guardabassi L (2006). *Spa* typing of methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolated from domestic animals and veterinary staff in the UK and Ireland. *Journal of Antimicrobial Chemotherapy* **58**: 1118-1123

Moodley A, Oosthuysen WF, Duse AG, Marias E and the South African MRSA surveillance group (2010) Molecular characterization of clinical methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* isolates in South Africa. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **48**: 4608-4611.

Otter AJ and French LG (2008) The emergence of community-associated methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* at a London teaching hospital, 2000-2006. *Clinical Microbiology Infection* **14**: 670-676

Shopsin B, Mathema B, Alcabes P, Said-Salim B, Lina G, Matsuka A, Martinez J and Kreiswirth BN (2003) Prevalence of *agr* specificity groups among *Staphylococcus aureus* strains colonising children and their guardians. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **41**: 456-459

Stefani S, Chung DR, Lindsay JA, Friedrich AW, Kearns AM, Westh H and MacKenzie FM (2012). Methicillin resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA): global epidemiology and harmonisation of typing methods. *International Journal of Antimicrobial Agents* **39**: 273-282

Strommenger B, Braukle C, Heuck D, Schmidt C, Pasemann B, Nübel and Witte W (2008) *Spa* typing of *Staphylococcus aureus* as a frontline tool in epidemiological typing. *Journal of Clinical Microbiology* **46**: 574-581

APPENDIX A

Reagents and buffers used in the experimental procedures

1. Brain Heart Infusion Broth (BHI) (500 ml)

BHI (Merck, Darmstadt, Germany)	18.5	g
Distilled water	400	ml

500 ml/1000 X 37 g = 18.5 g in 500 ml

Dissolve 18.5 g of BHI broth in 400 ml of sterile distilled water, adjust volume to 500 ml. Autoclave at 121°C for 15 min

2. 50% Glycerol (1:1) solution (500 ml)

Glycerol (Merck, Darmstadt, Germany)	250	ml
Distilled water	250	ml

Add 250 ml of glycerol to 250 ml of sterile distilled water. Autoclave at 121°C for 15 min

3. Tris-boric EDTA (TBE) buffer 10X (pH 8.3) (500 ml)

Tris-base (Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, USA)	54	g
Boric acid (Merck, Darmstadt, Germany)	27.5	g
0.5 M EDTA (pH 8.0)	20	ml

Dissolve 54 g of Tris-base and 27.5 g of boric acid in 400 ml of sterile distilled water and add 20 ml of 0.5 M EDTA buffer. Adjust pH to 8.3 and bring volume to 500 ml. Autoclave at 121°C for 15 min

APPENDIX B

1. Confirmation of MRSA isolates and DNA extraction

- a) MRSA isolates collected from the National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS) Diagnostic laboratory were subcultured on blood agar plates (Oxoid, England) to obtain single colonies for Gram-staining.
- b) The blood agar plates (Oxoid, England) were incubated at 37°C for 18 h to 24 h.
- c) Gram-staining was performed to confirm that the MRSA isolates were not contaminated.
- d) A pure single colony was inoculated in 3 ml of 3.7% sterile BHI broth (Merck, Darmstadt, Germany) and incubated at 37°C for 18 h to 24 h.
- e) Freeze cultures were prepared by transferring 750 µl of 50% sterile glycerol (Merck, Darmstadt, Germany) plus 750 µl of each of the broth cultures to a sterile 2 ml cryotube (BioExpress, Kaysville, USA).
- f) The 2 ml cryotubes (BioExpress, Kayville, USA) were stored at -70°C (New Brunswick Scientific, England) for future use.

2. Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) extraction of MRSA isolates

- a) Bacterial DNA was isolated with the ZR Fungal/Bacterial DNA kit (Zymo Research, USA)
- b) One millilitre of the cell suspension in a BHI (Merck, Darmstadt, Germany) broth was taken after 48 h of incubation and transferred into a sterile 2 ml Eppendorf tube (Eppendorf AG, Hamburg, Germany) and centrifuged (Spectrafuge 24D, Labnet International, Inc., New Jersey, USA) at 4 930 x g for 15 min at 4°C to obtain a pellet.
- c) Hundred microlitre of the pelleted bacterial cells were resuspended in 200 µl of phosphate buffer and placed in the ZR BashingBead^{dTM} Lysis Tube which contained 750 µl lysis solution was added to the tube (ZR BashingBea^{dTM} Lysis Tube).
- d) The tube was vortexed (VELP Scientifica, Italy) for \pm 5 min at maximum speed.
- e) The ZR BashingBead Lysis Tube (Zymo Research, USA) was centrifuged in a Spectrafuge centrifuge (Labnet International, USA) at \geq 10 000 x g for 1 min.

- f) Four hundred microlitre (400 μ l) of the supernatant was transferred to a Zymo-spin IV Spin Filter in a collection tube and centrifuged (Spectrafuge centrifuge, Labnet International, USA) at 4 500 \times g for 1 min.
- g) To the filtrate in the collection tube, 1 200 μ l of bacterial DNA binding buffer was added.
- h) A volume of 800 μ l was transferred to a Zymo-Spin IIC column (Zymo Research, USA) in a collection tube and centrifuged (Spectrafuge centrifuge, Labnet International, USA) at 10 000 \times g for 1 min.
- i) The flow-through from the collection tube was discarded and the latter step repeated.
- j) Two hundred microlitre of DNA Pre-Wash Buffer (Zymo Research, USA) was added to the Zymo-spin IIC column (Zymo Research, USA) in a new collection tube and centrifuged (Spectrafuge centrifuge, Labnet International, USA) at 10 000 \times g for 1 min.
- k) A volume of 500 μ l of bacterial DNA wash buffer was added to the Zymo-spin IIC column (Zymo Research, USA) and centrifuged (Spectrafuge centrifuge, Labnet International, USA) at 10 000 \times g for 1 min.
- l) The Zymo-spin IIC column (Zymo Research, USA) was transferred to a clean 1.5 ml microcentrifuge tube and 100 μ l DNA elution buffer (Zymo Research, USA) was added to the column matrix and centrifuged (Spectrafuge centrifuge, Labnet International, USA) at 10 000 \times g for 30 s to elute the DNA.
- m) The eluted ultra-pure DNA was stored at -20°C until further analysis.

3. Analysis of all PCR assay amplicons

- a) A 1% (M/V) Seakem[®] LE agarose gel (Lonza, Rockland, USA) was used for the multiplex-PCR for the 16S rRNA, *mecA*, PVL genes *SCCmec*, as well as the *agr* and single PCR for the house keeping genes for MLST analysis) and 3% (M/V) Seakem[®] LE agarose gel (Lonza, Rockland, USA) (*spa* typing) were prepared by dissolving 1 g and 3 g of Seakem[®] LE agarose powder (Lonza, Rockland, USA) respectively, in 100 ml of 1X TBE [45 mM Tris borate, (pH 8), 1 mM EDTA] (Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, USA).

- b) The mixture was heated using a microwave oven (Defy, South Africa) and cooled at 50°C in a Techne Hybridiser HB-1D oven (Techne Corporation, Cambridge, England) for 30 min.
- c) Five microlitre of ethidium bromide (stock of 10 mg/ml) (Promega, Madison, USA) was added to the Seakem[®] LE agarose gel (Lonza, Rockland, USA) and the mixture was poured into a casting tray (Bio-Rad, California, USA) containing a 18 well comb, which was allowed to solidify for 1 h.
- d) One litre of the 1X TBE buffer [45 mM Tris borate, (pH 8), 1 mM EDTA] (Sigma-Aldrich, St. Louis, USA) was poured into the electrophoresis chamber (Bio-Rad, California, USA) and the solidified gel was placed inside the electrophoresis chamber (Bio-Rad, California, USA).
- e) The band sizes of the different genes obtained after PCR amplification were separated at 100 V.cm⁻¹ for 1 h 30 min.
- f) A 50 and 100 bp molecular weight marker (Fermentas Life Sciences, Thermo Scientific, USA) was included as reference markers in the first and the last lane.
- g) The gels were photographed and digitalised using a Ultra Violet light box (DigiDoc, UVP product, Upland, California).

4. Cleaning of amplicons after gel electrophoresis (Zymoclean[™] Gel DNA Recovery Kit)

- a) Twenty-four millilitre of 100% ethanol (Merck, Darmstadt, Germany) was added to the 6 ml of DNA wash buffer concentrate to obtain the final DNA wash buffer solution.
- b) The DNA fragment was excised from the agarose gel (Lonza, Rockland, USA) using a razor blade and transferred to a 1.5 ml microcentrifuge tube (Labtech International, USA)
- c) Three volumes of ADB solution (Zymo Research, USA) was added to the excised agarose gel.
- d) The excised gel was incubated at 45⁰C for 10 min until the gel slice was completely dissolved.
- e) The dissolved agarose solution was transferred to a Zymo-Spin[™] I Column in a Collection Tube.

- f) The Collection Tube was centrifuged (Spectrafuge centrifuge, Labnet International, USA) at 10 000 x g for 60 s and the flow-through was discarded.
- g) Two-hundred millilitre of the wash buffer was added to the column and centrifuged (Spectrafuge centrifuge, Labnet International, USA) at 10 000 x g for 30 s and the flow-through was discarded. The wash step was repeated.
- h) RNase-free water (Qiagen, Germany) (6 μ l) was added directly to the column matrix and the column was placed into a 1.5 ml tube. The column was centrifuged (Spectrafuge centrifuge, Labnet International, USA) at 10 000 x g for 1 min to elute the DNA.
- i) The eluted ultra-pure DNA was stored at -20°C until further analysis

REFERENCES

Sambrook J and Russell DW (2001) Commonly used techniques in molecular cloning. In Sambrook J and Russell DW (3rd ed). Molecular cloning: A Laboratory Manual. Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, New York, USA: pp A8.9-A8.10

APPENDIX C: Clinical information of MRSA isolates and molecular results

Table 3.10: Combined results of the three PCR assays and (SCC*mec* and PFGE) used for the characterisation of the 194 MRSA isolates obtained from the Steve Biko Academic Hospital

MRSA isolates	Gender	Age	Clinical wards	Specimen Type	E-test	Vitek 2 System	<i>spa</i> cluster	<i>spa</i> subcluster	<i>spa</i> types (sequencing)	SCC <i>mec</i>	<i>agr</i> groups	PFGE	MLST	HA-MRSA or CA-MRSA
1	F	27 d	PS	Pus swab	NP	NP	A	A1	NA	I	II	A3	NA	HA-MRSA
2	M	35 y	Urology	BC	NP	NP	A	A1	t1257	IVd	I	E	NA	CA-MRSA
3	M	28 y	Neurosurgical	BC	NP	NP	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
4	M	28 y	Neurosurgical	BC	+	+	Cont	Cont	NA	II	Cont	Cont	NA	HA-MRSA
5	M	28 y	ST	BC	+	NP	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
6	F	38 y	ST	BC	+	NP	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
7	M	29 y	IM	Pus swab	+	NP	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
8	F	38 y	ST	BC	+	NP	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
9	F	38 y	ST	BC	+	NP	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
10	M	29 y	IM	Urine	+	NP	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
11	F	38 y	ST	BC	+	+	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
12	F	38 y	ST	BC	+	+	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
13	F	58 y	MP	Luki	+	+	D	D2	NA	IVd	I	A5	NA	CA-MRSA
14	F	38 y	ST	CVP tip	+	+	A	A4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A1	NA	HA-MRSA
15	M	4 y	Ward 60	BC	+	+	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
16	M	2y6m	Neurosurgical	Luki	+	NP	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A1	NA	HA-MRSA
17	M	63 d	Paediatric ICU	CVP tip	+	+	A	A4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A1	NA	HA-MRSA
18	M	2 y	Neurosurgery	CVP tip	+	NP	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A1	NA	HA-MRSA
19	M	65 y	OP	Tissue	+	NP	A	A4	NA	IVd	I	A5	NA	CA-MRSA
20	F	38 y	ST	BC	+	NP	E	E3	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
BC	-Blood culture	F	-Female	M	-Male	ND	-Not detected	PS	-Paediatric surgery	D	-Days			
ICU	-Intensive care unit	m	-Months	NP	-Not provided	ST	-Surgery and trauma	NA-	Not applicable					
Cont	-Contaminated	IM	-Internal medicine	MP	-Medical pulmonology	NT	-Not typeable	y	-Years					
CVP tip	-Central venous pressure tip	Luki	-Endotracheal aspirate	OP	-Orthopaedic									

Table 3.10: Combined results of the three PCR assays and (SCC*mec* and PFGE) used for the characterisation of the 194 MRSA isolates obtained from the Steve Biko Academic Hospital (continued)

MRSA isolates	Gender	Age	Clinical wards	Specimen Type	E-test	Vitek 2 System	<i>spa</i> cluster	<i>spa</i> subcluster	<i>spa</i> types (sequencing)	SCC <i>mec</i>	<i>agr</i> groups	PFGE	MLST	HA-MRSA or CA-MRSA		
21	F	38 y	ST	CVP tip	+	NP	A	A4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA		
22	F	38 y	ST	BC	+	+	B	B4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA		
23	F	7 m	PS	BC	+	+	E	E3	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA		
24	M	35 y	OP	Pus swab	+	+	E	E3	NA	IVd	I	A3	NA	CA-MRSA		
25	F	4y4m	PS	BC	NP	+	E	E3	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A3	NA	HA-MRSA		
26	M	33 y	OPD	Pus swab	+	NP	E	E3	NA	IVd	I	A	NA	CA-MRSA		
27	F	47 y	ST	BC	+	+	E	E3	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA		
28	F	2y1m	PS	CVP tip	+	+	E	E3	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA		
29	F	23 y	Nephrology	Urine	NP	NP	E	E3	NA	IVd	I	C	NA	CA-MRSA		
30	M	2y6m	PS	BC	NP	+	E	E3	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA		
31	M	49 y	Neurosurgery	CVP tip	+	NP	A	A4	NA	IVd	III	D	NA	CA-MRSA		
32	M	45 m	HCM	BC	+	NP	B	B3	NA	II	III	A5	NA	HA-MRSA		
33	F	12 d	ST	CVP tip	+	NP	A	A4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA		
34	M	22 y	OP	Tissue	+	NP	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA		
35	M	1y2m	PS	CVP tip	+	NP	E	E2	NA	I	II	A3	NA	HA-MRSA		
36	F	4 m	ICU	BC	+	NP	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A4	NA	HA-MRSA		
37	M	22 y	OP	Tissue	NP	NP	B	B4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA		
38	M	26 y	HCM	CVP tip	+	NP	D	D1	NA	IVd	I	A4	NA	CA-MRSA		
39	M	92 d	Coronary ICU	BC	NP	NP	D	D2	NA	IVd	I	A4	NA	CA-MRSA		
40	M	27 y	ST	CVP tip	+	+	C	C2	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	CA-MRSA		
BC	-Blood culture		F	-Female		M	-Male		ND	-Not detected		PS	-Paediatric surgery		D	-Days
ICU	-Intensive care unit		m	-Months		NP	-Not provided		ST	-Surgery and trauma		NA-	Not applicable			
Cont	-Contaminated		IM	-Internal medicine		MP	-Medical pulmonology		NT	-Not typeable		y	-Years			
CVP tip	-Central venous pressure tip		Luki	-Endotracheal aspirate		OP	-Orthopaedic									

Table 3.10: Combined results of the three PCR assays and (SCC*mec* and PFGE) used for the characterisation of the 194 MRSA isolates obtained from the Steve Biko Academic Hospital (continued)

MRSA isolates	Gender	Age	Clinical wards	Specimen Type	E-test	Vitek 2 System	<i>spa</i> cluster	<i>spa</i> subcluster	<i>spa</i> types (sequencing)	SCC <i>mec</i>	<i>agr</i> groups	PFGE	MLST	HA-MRSA or CA-MRSA
41	M	10 m	GP	CVP tip	+	+	D	D1	NA	IVd	I	A6	NA	CA-MRSA
42	M	2 y	PP	Sputum	NP	+	D	D2	NA	IVd	I	A4	NA	CA-MRSA
43	M	45 y	Short stay	BC	+	NP	L	L	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
44	M	9 d	Neonatal ICU	BC	+	NP	K	K2	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
45	M	1 d	Baby room ICU	BC	NP	NP	L	L	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	II	A	NA	HA-MRSA
46	M	17 d	Neonatal ICU	Pus swab	NP	NP	Outlier	Outlier	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	B	NA	HA-MRSA
47	M	15 y	Nephrology	BC	+	NP	L	L	NA	IVd	I	B	NA	CA-MRSA
48	M	44 y	ST	BC	+	NP	L	Outlier	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
49	M	50 y	Neurosurgical	Luki	NP	NP	L	L	NA	IVd	I	A5	NA	CA-MRSA
50	M	25 d	Paediatric ICU	BC	+	NP	K	K2	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
51	M	56 y	Cardiothoracic	BC	NP	+	K	K2	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
52	M	22 y	Neurosurgical	CVP tip	+	+	NT	NT	NA	I	I	F	NA	HA-MRSA
53	M	38 y	ST	BC	+	+	K	K1	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
54	M	1y2m	PS	CVP tip	+	NP	K	K1	NA	I	II	A3	NA	HA-MRSA
55	M	13 d	Neonatal ICU	BC	+	NP	Outlier	Outlier	NA	IVd	I	A5	NA	CA-MRSA
56	F	73 y	IM	CVP tip	+	+	C	C2	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	III	A	NA	HA-MRSA
57	M	52 y	OP	Tissue	+	+	K	Outlier	NA	II	III	A4	NA	HA-MRSA
58	M	16 d	Paediatric ICU	BC	+	NP	K	Outlier	NA	IVd	I	A1	NA	CA-MRSA
59	M	25 y	ST	BC	+	NP	D	D1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A2	NA	HA-MRSA
60	M	25 y	ST	BC	+	NP	H	H	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA

BC -Blood culture
ICU -Intensive care unit
Cont -Contaminated
CVP tip -Central venous pressure tip
F -Female
m -Months
IM -Internal medicine
Luki -Endotracheal aspirate
M -Male
NP -Not provided
MP -Medical pulmonology
OP -Orthopaedic
ND -Not detected
ST -Surgery and trauma
NT -Not typeable
PS -Paediatric surgery
NA -Not applicable
y -Years
D -Days

Table 3.10: Combined results of the three PCR assays and (SCC*mec* and PFGE) used for the characterisation of 194 the MRSA isolates obtained from the Steve Biko Academic Hospital (continued)

MRSA isolates	Gender	Age	Clinical wards	Specimen Type	E-test	Vitek 2 System	<i>spa</i> cluster	<i>spa</i> subcluster	<i>spa</i> types (sequencing)	SCC <i>mec</i>	<i>agr</i> groups	PFGE	MLST	HA-MRSA or CA-MRSA	
61	M	27 y	ST	BC	+	+	J	J	NA	IVd	III	A4	NA	CA-MRSA	
62	F	14 y	Oncology	Pus swab	+	NP	E	E3	NA	IVd	I	A	NA	CA-MRSA	
63	M	57 y	HCM	CVP tip		+	F	F	NA	IVd	I	A	NA	CA-MRSA	
64	M	50 y	Urology	Urine	+	NP	F	F	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA	
65	M	20 y	Neurological	Urine	+	NP	F	F	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA	
66	F	14 y	Oncology	Pus swab	+	+	D	D1	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA	
67	M	4 d	PaediatricICU	BC	+	NP	C	C1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA	
68	M	60 y	MP	Luki	+	NP	C	C1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA	
69	M	60 y	MP	Luki	+	+	C	C1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA	
70	F	69 y	OP	Pus swab	NP	NP	C	Outlier	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA	
71	F	20 y	OP	Pus swab	+	NP	D	D1	t891	V	I	A3	ST22	CA-MRSA	
72	M	48 y	CS	Pus swab	+	NP	B	B1	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA	
73	M	16 y	OP	Pus swab	NP	NP	E	E1	NA	IVd	I	A	NA	CA-MRSA	
74	M	29 y	OP	Pus swab	NP	NP	E	E4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A3	NA	HA-MRSA	
75	M	49 y	ICU	BC	+	NP	E	E4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	K	NA	HA-MRSA	
76	M	27 y	MP	Sputum	+	NP	E	E4	NA	IVd	I	A4	NA	HA-MRSA	
77	M	49 y	ICU	BC	NP	NP	E	E4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA	
78	M	52 y	HCM	CVP tip	+	NP	E	E4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA	
79	M	10 m	GP	Tissue	NP	+	E	E4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA	
80	F	81 y	ST	Urine	+	+	J	J	NA	II	III	A5	NA	HA-MRSA	
BC	-Blood culture		F	-Female		M	-Male		ND	-Not detected		PS	-Paediatric surgery	D	-Days
ICU	-Intensive care unit		m	-Months		NP	-Not provided		ST	-Surgery and trauma		NA	-Not applicable		
Cont	-Contaminated		IM	-Internal medicine		MP	-Medical pulmonology		NT	-Not typeable		y	-Years		
CVP tip	-Central venous pressure tip		Luki	-Endotracheal aspirate		OP	-Orthopaedic								

Table 3.10: Combined results of the three PCR assays and (SCC*mec* and PFGE) used for the characterisation of the 194 MRSA isolates obtained from the Steve Biko Academic Hospital (continued)

MRSA isolates	Gender	Age	Clinical wards	Specimen Type	E-test	Vitek 2 System	<i>spa</i> cluster	<i>spa</i> subcluster	<i>spa</i> types (sequencing)	SCC <i>mec</i>	<i>agr</i> groups	PFGE	MLST	HA-MRSA or CA-MRSA
81	F	81 y	OP	Pus swab	+	+	D	D1	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
82	F	81 y	OP	Pus swab	+	NP	E	E2	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
83	M	48 y	Urology	Pus swab	+	NP	E	E2	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A5	NA	HA-MRSA
84	M	39 y	OP	Tissue	+	+	J	Outlier	NA	II	III	A1	NA	HA-MRSA
85	F	14 y	Oncology	Pus swab			Outlier	Outlier	NA	IVd	I	G	NA	CA-MRSA
86	M	67 y	NP	CVP tip	+	+	E	E1	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I, III	A1	NA	HA-MRSA
87	F	35 d	Paediatric ICU	BC	+	+	E	E4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
88	M	49 y	ICU	BC	+	+	E	E4	NA	II	I, III	A	NA	HA-MRSA
89	F	26 d	Neonatal ICU	BC	+	+	E	E1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
90	M	31 y	NP	Pus swab	+	+	G	G1	NA	IVd	I	A6	NA	CA-MRSA
91	F	22 d	Neonatal ICU	BC	+	+	H	H	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
92	M	7 d	Paediatric ICU	BC	+	+	E	E3	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
93	F	37 y	Neurology	BC	+	+	D	D2	NA	IVd	I	A5	NA	CA-MRSA
94	M	47 y	OP	Pus swab	+	NP	A	A2	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
95	F	62 y	ST	BC	+	+	A	A2	NA	IVd	I	A1	NA	CA-MRSA
96	M	29 y	Surgery burns	BC	+	NP	A	A2	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
97	F	39 y	OP	Tissue	NP	+	D	C2	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
98	M	40 y	CS	Luki	NP	NP	A	A5	NA	IVd	I	A4	NA	CA-MRSA
99	M	8 y	PA	Pus swab	+	+	A	A2	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
100	M	52 y	Nephrology	BC	+	NP	A	A5	t1257	IVd	I	A6	ST612	CA-MRSA
BC	-Blood culture		F	-Female		M	-Male		ND	-Not detected	PS	-Paediatric surgery	D	-Days
ICU	-Intensive care unit		m	-Months		NP	-Not provided		ST	-Surgery and trauma	NA	-Not applicable		
Cont	-Contaminated		IM	-Internal medicine		MP	-Medical pulmonology		NT	-Not typeable	y	-Years		
CVP tip	-Central venous pressure tip		Luki	-Endotracheal aspirate		OP	-Orthopaedic							

Table 3.10: Combined results of the three PCR assays and (SCC*mec* and PFGE) used for the characterisation of the 194 MRSA isolates obtained from the Steve Biko Academic Hospital (continued)

MRSA isolates	Gender	Age	Clinical wards	Specimen Type	E-test	Vitek 2 System	<i>spa</i> cluster	<i>spa</i> subcluster	<i>spa</i> types (sequencing)	SCC <i>mec</i>	<i>agr</i> groups	PFGE	MLST	HA-MRSA or CA-MRSA
101	M	28 y	HCM	Pus swab	+	NP	B	A5	NA	IVd	I	B	NA	CA-MRSA
102	F	39 y	OP	Pus swab		+	H	H	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
103	F	6 d	Neonatal ICU	BC	+	+	D	D1	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
104	F	61 y	OP	BC	+	NP	D	D2	NA	IVd	I	B	NA	CA-MRSA
105	F	5 m	Neonatal ICU	BC	+	NP	D	D2	NA	IVd	I	A6	NA	CA-MRSA
106	M	7 m	Paediatric ICU	BC	NP	NP	G	G1	NA	II	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
107	F	42 y	ST	Luki	+	+	G	G2	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A6	NA	HA-MRSA
108	F	24 y	Neurosurgical	CVP tip	NP	NP	G	G2	NA	IVd	I	A6	NA	CA-MRSA
109	F	16 y	NP	NP	NP	NP	G	G2	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
110	M	13 y	Neurosurgical	BC	+	NP	G	G1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A3	NA	HA-MRSA
111	F	1y1m	NP	NP	NP	NP	G	G1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
112	F	77 y	HCM	BC	+	NP	G	G1	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
113	F	54 y	NP	NP	NP	NP	G	G1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	CA-MRSA
114	M	4 d	Paediatric ICU	BC	+	NP	G	Outlier	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
115	M	31 y	ARV	Pus swab	+	+	G	G2	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
116	F	24 y	GS	Pus swab	NP	+	B	B4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
117	M	49 y	Nephrology	Pus swab	+	NP	G	G1	NA	IVd	I	A	NA	CA-MRSA
118	M	51 y	Main casualty	Pus swab	+	NP	G	G1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
119	M	52 y	Surgery	BC	+	NP	G	G1	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
120	M	78 y	CS	Luki	+	NP	G	G1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
BC	-Blood culture	F	-Female	M	-Male	ND	-Not detected	PS	-Paediatric surgery	D	-Days			
ICU	-Intensive care unit	m	-Months	NP	-Not provided	ST	-Surgery and trauma	NA	-Not applicable					
Cont	-Contaminated	IM	-Internal medicine	MP	-Medical pulmonology	NT	-Not typeable	y	-Years					
CVP tip	-Central venous pressure tip	Luki	-Endotracheal aspirate	OP	-Orthopaedic									

Table 3.10: Combined results of the three PCR assays and (SCCmec and PFGE) used for the characterisation of the 194 MRSA isolates obtained from the Steve Biko Academic Hospital (continued)

MRSA isolates	Gender	Age	Clinical wards	Specimen Type	E-test	Vitek 2 System	spa cluster	spa subcluster	spa types (sequencing)	SCCmec	agr groups	PFGE	MLST	HA-MRSA or CA-MRSA		
121	F	71 y	IM	BC	+	NP	G	G1	NA	SCCmercury	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA		
122	M	23 d	Paediatric ICU	BC	+	NP	B	B4	NA	II+SCCmercury	I	A4	NA	HA-MRSA		
123	F	4 y	Neonatal ICU	Briviac tip	+	+	A	A2	NA	IVd	I	A3	NA	CA-MRSA		
124	F	4y3m	PP	Sputum	+	NP	B	B3	NA	IVd	I	A5	NA	CA-MRSA		
125	M	17 d	Paediatric ICU	BC	+	NP	NT	NT	t037	I	I	NT	NA	HA-MRSA		
126	M	6 m	Paediatric ICU	BC	+	+	B	B1	NA	II+SCCmercury	II	A6	NA	HA-MRSA		
127	F	28 d	Neonatal ICU	Pus swab	+	NP	A	A2	NA	SCCmercury	I	A6	NA	HA-MRSA		
128	F	65 y	OPD	Pus swab	+	NP	B	B4	NA	II+SCCmercury	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA		
129	M	35 y	HCM	BC	+	NP	B	B4	NA	SCCmercury	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA		
130	M	49 y	ST	Luki	NP	NP	B	B4	NA	II+SCCmercury	I	A4	NA	CA-MRSA		
131	F	42 y	ST	NP	NP	NP	B	B4	t037	II+SCCmercury	II	A	ST239	HA-MRSA		
132	M	60 y	IM	BC	+	NP	B	B3	NA	IVd	I	H	NA	CA-MRSA		
133	M	27 y	HCM	BC	+	NP	B	B1	t037	IVa	I	A	ST239	CA-MRSA		
134	F	78 y	UG	Pus swab	+	NP	NT	NT	NT	IVd	I	B2	NA	CA-MRSA		
135	M	28 y	HCM	Pus swab	+	NP	B	B4	NA	II+SCCmercury	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA		
136	M	31 y	Neurosurgical	CVP tip	+	+	B	B1	NA	SCCmercury	I	A1	NA	HA-MRSA		
137	M	70 y	IM	CVP tip	+	NP	A	A2	NA	IVd	I	B1	NA	CA-MRSA		
138	M	35 y	Main casualty	Luki		+	NT	NT	NA	IVd	I	I	NA	CA-MRSA		
139	F	52 d	PS	CVP tip	+	+	NT	NT	NA	IVd	I	I	NA	CA-MRSA		
140	F	40 d	Neonatal ICU	Briviac tip	+	+	H	H	NA	II+SCCmercury	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA		
BC	-Blood culture		F	-Female		M	-Male		ND	-Not detected		PS	-Paediatric surgery		D	-Days
ICU	-Intensive care unit		m	-Months		NP	-Not provided		ST	-Surgery and trauma		NA	-Not applicable			
Cont	-Contaminated		IM	-Internal medicine		MP	-Medical pulmonology		NT	-Not typeable		y	-Years			
CVP tip	-Central venous pressure tip		Luki	-Endotracheal aspirate		OP	-Orthopaedic									

Table 3.10: Combined results of the three PCR assays and (SCC*mec* and PFGE) used for the characterisation of the 194 MRSA isolates obtained from the Steve Biko Academic Hospital (continued)

MRSA isolates	Gender	Age	Clinical wards	Specimen Type	E-test	Vitek 2 System	<i>spa</i> cluster	<i>spa</i> subcluster	<i>spa</i> types (sequencing)	SCC <i>mec</i>	<i>agr</i> groups	PFGE	MLST	HA-MRSA or CA-MRSA
141	F	46 y	ST	BC	NP	+	K	K1	NA	II	I	J	NA	HA-MRSA
142	M	27 y	Surgery male	Catheter tip	+	+	D	D2	NA	IVd	I, III	A3	NA	CA-MRSA
143	M	45 y	ST	Pus swab	+	+	A	A1	t1257	Iva	III	B	ST612	CA-MRSA
144	M	40 d	Neonatal ICU	BC	+	NP	A	A1	NA	II+SCC <i>merry</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
145	F	28 y	Gynaecology	Pus swab	+	+	B	B1	NA	II+SCC <i>merry</i>	I	A3	NA	HA-MRSA
146	M	38 y	OP	Pus swab	+	+	B	Outlier	NA	IVd	I	A	NA	CA-MRSA
147	M	2y2m	ARV	Pus swab	+	+	B	B1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
148	F	9 d	Paediatric	BC	+	+	B	B2	NA	II+SCC <i>merry</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
149	M	39 y	OP	Tissue	NP	NP	B	B2	NA	II+SCC <i>merry</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
150	F	64 y	IM	Sputum	+	+	B	Outlier	NA	II+SCC <i>merry</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
151	F	60 y	HCM	Pus swab	+	+	B	B2	NA	II+SCC <i>merry</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
152	M	2y2m	ARV	Pus swab	+	+	B	B1	NA	II+SCC <i>merry</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
153	M	52 y	ST	CVP tip	+	+	B	B1	NA	II+SCC <i>merry</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
154	F	26 d	Neonatal ICU	BC	+	+	B	B4	NA	II+SCC <i>merry</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
155	M	7 d	PaediatricIU	BC	+	+	B	B1	NA	II+SCC <i>merry</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
156	M	49 y	ST	Luki		+	B	B1	NA	II+SCC <i>merry</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
157	F	46 y	ST	Urine		+	B	Outlier	NA	II+SCC <i>merry</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
158	M	57 y	HCM	CVP tip	+	+	B	B4	NA	II+SCC <i>merry</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
159	M	60y	MP	Luki	+		B	B4	NA	II+SCC <i>merry</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA
160	F	24y	Main casualty	Tissue	+	+	B	B4	NA	II+SCC <i>merry</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA

BC	-Blood culture	F	-Female	M	-Male	ND	-Not detected	PS	-Paediatric surgery	D	-Days
ICU	-Intensive care unit	m	-Months	NP	-Not provided	ST	-Surgery and trauma	NA-	Not applicable		
Cont	-Contaminated	IM	-Internal medicine	MP	-Medical pulmonology	NT	-Not typeable	y	-Years		
CVP tip	-Central venous pressure tip	Luki	-Endotracheal aspirate	OP	-Orthopaedic						

Table 3.10: Combined results of the three PCR assays and (SCC*mec* and PFGE) used for the characterisation of the 194 MRSA isolates obtained from the Steve Biko Academic Hospital (continued)

MRSA isolates	Gender	Age	Clinical wards	Specimen Type	E-test	Vitek 2 System	<i>spa</i> cluster	<i>spa</i> subcluster	<i>spa</i> types (sequencing)	SCC <i>mec</i>	<i>agr</i> groups	PFGE	MLST	HA-MRSA or CA-MRSA			
161	M	60 y	MP	Luki		+	B	B1	NA	I	II	A3	NA	HA-MRSA			
162	F	75 y	Maxifacial	BC		+	B	B1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA			
163	M	38 y	OP	Tissue	+	+	A	A2	NA	PN	I	A	NA	NA			
164	M	1y2 m	PS	CSF	+	NP	B	B4	NA	PN	II	A3	NA	NA			
165	F	64 y	MP	Sputum	+	NP	NT	NT	NT	PN	I	I	NA	NA			
166	M	8 y	PU	Pus swab	+	NP	B	B4	NA	II	I	J	NA	HA-MRSA			
167	F	58 y	Neurosurgical	Pus swab	+	+	B	B4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA			
168	F	42 y	Surgery	Pus swab	NP	NP	B	B4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	III	A	NA	HA-MRSA			
169	M	32 y	HCM	BC	+	NP	B	B4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA			
170	M	16 y	OP	Pus swab	+	NP	B	B4	NA	II	I	NT	NA	HA-MRSA			
171	M	16 y	OP	Pus swab	+	NP	B	B4	NA	II	I	I	NA	HA-MRSA			
172	M	19 d	PS	CVP tip	+	NP	Outlier	D2	NA	II+SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A6	NA	HA-MRSA			
173	F	1 y	Paediatricsuy	BC	+	NP	A	A4	NA	IV	I	A	NA	CA-MRSA			
174	F	20 d	NeonatalICU	BC	+	NP	B	B4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	II	A4	NA	HA-MRSA			
175	M	16 y	OP	Tissue	+	NP	B	B3	NA	IV	I	B1	NA	CA-MRSA			
176	F	72 y	HCM	Sputum	+	NP	D	Outlier	NA	IV	I	A5	NA	CA-MRSA			
177	F	72 y	OP	Tissue	NP	NP	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA			
178	F	33 y	MP	CVP tip	+	NP	A	Outlier	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA			
179	M	16 y	OP	Pus swab	NP	NP	D	D1	NA	IV	I	A	NA	CA-MRSA			
180	F	69 y	OP	Tissue	+	+	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I,III	A5	NA	HA-MRSA			
BC	-Blood culture		F	-Female		M	-Male		ND	-Not detected		PS	-Paediatric surgery		D	-Days	
ICU	-Intensive care unit		m	-Months		NP	-Not provided		ST	-Surgery and trauma		NA	-Not applicable				
Cont	-Contaminated		IM	-Internal medicine		MP	-Medical pulmonology		NT	-Not typeable		y	-Years				
CVP tip	-Central venous pressure tip		Luki	-Endotracheal aspirate		OP	-Orthopaedic										

Table 3.10: Combined results of the three PCR assays and (SCC*mec* and PFGE) used for the characterisation of the 194 MRSA isolates obtained from the Steve Biko Academic Hospital (continued)

MRSA isolates	Gender	Age	Clinical wards	Specimen Type	E-test	Vitek 2 System	<i>spa</i> cluster	<i>spa</i> subcluster	<i>spa</i> types (sequencing)	SCC <i>mec</i>	<i>agr</i> groups	PFGE	MLST	HA-MRSA or CA-MRSA	
181	F	30 y	HCM	BC	+	+	I	I	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i> (II+SCC <i>mercury</i>)	III	J	NA	HA-MRSA	
182	F	25 y	Neonatal ICU	BC	+	NP	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i> (II+SCC <i>mercury</i>)	III	A	NA	HA-MRSA	
183	M	16 y	OP	Pus swab	+	NP	I	I	t012	II	I,III	J	ST36	HA-MRSA	
184	F	47 y	ST	Pus swab	NP	NP	I	I	NA	II	I,III	J	NA	HA-MRSA	
185	F	29 y	Main casualty	Tissue	+	NP	A	A1	NA	II	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA	
186	F	29 y	Main casualty	Tissue	+	+	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i> (II+SCC <i>mercury</i>)	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA	
187	F	35 y	Main casualty	Tissue	NP	NP	A	A4	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i>	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA	
188	F	69 y	OP	Tissue	+	+	A	A1	NA	SCC <i>mercury</i> (II+SCC <i>mercury</i>)	I	A	NA	HA-MRSA	
189	F	38 y	Neurology	BC	+	+	D	D1	NA	IVd	I	A	NA	CA-MRSA	
190	F	47 y	ST	BC	+	+	J	J	NA	II+IVc	III	J	NA	CA-MRSA	
191	F	49 y	HCM	BC	+	+	J	J	NA	II+IVc	III	J	NA	CA-MRSA	
192	F	47 y	ST	BC	+	+	J	J	NA	II+IVc	III	J	NA	CA-MRSA	
193	F	47 y	HCM	BC	+	+	J	J	NA	II+IVc	I,III	J	NA	CA-MRSA	
194	M	31 y	Main casualty	Sputum	NP	NPS	Outlier	A	NA	NT	I	A	NA	NT	
BC	-Blood culture		F	-Female		M	-Male		ND	-Not detected	PS	-Paediatric surgery		D	-Days
ICU	-Intensive care unit		m	-Months		NP	-Not provided		ST	-Surgery and trauma	NA	-Not applicable			
Cont	-Contaminated		IM	-Internal medicine		MP	-Medical pulmonology		NT	-Not typeable	y	-Years			
CVP tip	-Central venous pressure tip		Luki	-Endotracheal aspirate		OP	-Orthopaedic								